Cheape and good

HVSBANDRY

For the well-Ordering of all Beasts and Fowles, and for the generall Cure of their Diseases.

Containing the Natures, Breeding, Choice, Vse, Feeding, and Curing of the diseases of all manner of Cattell, as *Horse, Oxe, Cow, Sheepe, Goats, Swine*, and tame *Conies*.

Shewing further, the whole Art of Riding great Horses, with the breaking and ordering of them, and the dieting of the Running, Hunting, and Ambling Horse, and the manner how to use them in their travaile.

Also approved Rules for the Cramming and Fatting of all sorts of Poultry and Fowles, both tame and wilde, &c. And diverse good and well-approved Medicines for the Cure of all the diseases in Hawkes, of what kind soever.

Together with the use and profit of Bees, the making of Fish-ponds, and the taking of all sorts of Fish.

Gathered together for the generall good and profit of this whole Realme, by exact and assured experience from English practises, both certaine, easie, and cheap, differing from all former and forraine experiments, which either agreed not with our Clime, or were too hard to come by, or over-costly, and to little purpose: all which herein are avoyded. Newly corrected and inlarged with many excellent additions, as may appeare by this marke. ☞

The sixt Edition.

Printed at London by *Anne Griffin*, for Iohn [illegible]
to be sold at his shop in Pater-noster-row.

BODLEIAN
1901
LIBRARY

TO THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE,

And

Moſt ennobled with all inward and outward vertues, RICHARD SACKVILE, Baron of *Buckhurſt*, and Earle of *Dorſet*, &c.

ALthough the monſtrous ſhapes of Bookes (Right Honorable and beſt ennobled Lord) have with their diſguiſed and unprofitable viſard-like faces, halfe ſcared even Vertue her ſelfe from that ancient defence and patronage, (which in former ages moſt Nobly ſhe imployed) to preſerve them from Envie: yet ſo much I know the largeneſſe of your worthy breſt is endued with wiſdome, courage, and bounty, that notwithſtanding the vanities of our ignorant Writers, you will be pleaſed out of your Noble Spirit, favourably to

hold whatsoever shal bring a publike good to our Country, at which end I have onely aymed in this small Booke. In which having runne farre from the way or track of other Writers in this nature, yet I doubt not but your Honour shall finde my path both more easie, more certaine, and more safe than any, nay, by much, farre lesse difficult or dangerous to walke in. I must confesse, something in this nature I have formerly published, as namely of the Horse onely, with whose nature and use I have beene exercised and acquainted from my Child-hood: and I hope, without boast, need not yeeld to any in this Kingdome. Yet in this worke, I hope, your Lordship, and all other Princely maintainers of that worthy and serviceable beast, shall finde I have found out, and herein explained a nearer and more easie course for his preservation and health, than hath hitherto beene found or practised by any, but my selfe onely. Whatsoever it is, in all humblenesse I offer it as a sacrifice of my love and service to your Honor, and will ever whilest I have breath to be,

be your Honours

in all dutifull service,

G. M.

TO THE COVRTEOVS READER.

THere is no Artiſt or man of Induſtry (Courteous and Gentle Reader) which mixeth judgement with his experience, but findeth in the travell of his labours better and nearer courſes to make perfect the beauty of his worke, than were at firſt preſented to the eye of his knowledge: for the minde being pre-occupied and buſied with a vertuous ſearch, is ever ready to catch hold of whatſoever can adorne or illuſtrate the excellencie of the thing in which hee is imployed: and hence it hapneth that my ſelfe having ſeriouſly beſtowed many yeares to finde out the truth of theſe knowledges, of which I have intreated in this Booke; have now found out the infallible way of curing all diſeaſes in Cattell, which is by many degrees more certaine, more eaſie, leſſe difficult, and without all manner of coſt and extraordinary charges, than ever have beene publiſhed by any home-borne, or forraigne practiſer. Wherein (friendly Reader) thou ſhalt finde that my whole drift is to helpe the needfull in his moſt want and extremity. For having many times in my journeying ſeene poore and rich mens Cattell fall ſodainely ſicke, ſome travelling by the way, ſome drawing in the Plough or draught, and ſome

upon other imployments; I have also beheld those Cattell or Horse die ere they could bee brought either to Smith, or other place where they might receive cure; nay, if with much paines they have beene brought to the place of cure, yet have I seene Smiths so unprovided of Apothecary Simples, that for want of matter of sixepence, a Beast hath dyed worth many Angels. To prevent this, I have found out those certaine and approved Cures; wherein if every good Horse-lover, or Husbandman, will but acquaint his knowledge with a few herbs or common weeds, hee shall be sure in every Field, Pasture, Meadow, or Land-furrow; nay, almost by every High-way side or blinde ditch, to finde that which shall preserve and keepe his Horse from all sodaine extremities. If thou shalt finde benefit, thinke mine houres not ill wasted; if thou shalt not have occasion to approve them, yet give them thy gentle passage to others, and thinke me as I am,

Thy Friend,

A.D. 1638. G. M.

The Table of the first Booke.

Of Beasts.

Of the Horse.

Of the Horse in generall. pag. 1.
Nature of Horses. 2.
Choice of Horses, and their shapes. ibid.
Colours of Horses. 3
Horses for a Princes seat. ib.
Horses for travell. ib.
Hunting-horses. 4
Running-horses. ib.
Coach-horses. ib.
Packe-horses. 5
Cart-horses. ib.
Of Mares. ib.
Ordering horses for service. ib.
Ordering horses for a Princes seat. 6
Ordering of travelling horses. 7
Ordering of hunting-horses. 8
Ordering of running-horses. ib.
Ordering of Coach-horses. 9
Ordering of the packe or cart-horse. 9
The preservation of horses. ib.
Of riding in generall. 10
Imperfect use of this recreation. ib.
The pleasure of Riding. 11
The Authors apologie. ib.
The taming of a young Colt. 12
His sadling and bridling. ib.
His first backing. 13
Three maine points of a horsemans skill. 15
Of helpes, and what they bee. ibid.
Of Corrections, and which they bee. 16
Of Cherishings. ib.
Of the Musrole, and Martingale. 17
Of treading the large ring. 18

Choyce of grounds. p. 18
Of galloping large rings. 20
Helpes in the large ring-turnes ib.
Corrections in the ring-turnes. 21
Cherishings in the ring-turnes 22
Of stopping and going back. ib.
Helpes. 23
Corrections. ib.
Cherishings. 24
Of advancing before. ib.
Helpes. 25
Corrections. ib.
Cherishings. 26
The use of advancing. ib.
Of yerking behind. ib.
Helpes. 27
Corrections. ib.
Cherishings. ib.
Of turning. ib.
Helpes. 30
Corrections. ib.
Cherishings. ib.
Of the turning post. 32
Of managing. 33
Diversities of manages. 34
Of the Carriere. 34
Horses for pleasure. 35
Of bounding aloft. ib.
Of the ramade. 36
Of the gallop gallyard. ib.
Of the Capriolle. 37
Of going aside. 38
Of riding before a Prince. 39
Of the Curvolo. ib.
To ride for recreation. 40
Of breeding of all sorts of horses fit for the Husband-mans use. 41
Grounds to breed on. 42
Division of grounds. ib.
Choyce of the Stallion. 43
Choyce of Mares. ib.
When to put them together. ibid.
Of covering Mares. 44
To know if a Mare hold. ib.
To conceive Male Foales. ib.
To provoke lust. 45
To keepe Mares from barrennesse. ibid.
Ordering Mares after covering. ib.
A helpe for Mares in Foaling. ib.
Ordering Mares after Foaling. 46
Weaning of Foales. ib.
Ordering after weaning. ib.
Gelding of Colts. ib.
Of horses for travell, and how to make them amble. 47
The marks of a good travelling Horse. ib.

To

To make a Horse amble. p. 47
Divers wayes of ambling. 48
Of travelling. ib.
Of Wisping. ib.
Helpes in ambling. ib.
The ordering and dyeting of the Hunting-horse. 49
Taking up the Hunting-horse. 50
Cloathing the hunting-horse. ib.
Dressing the Hunting-horse. 51
Of watering and feeding the hunting-horse. 52
The exercise of the horse. 53
The scowring of the horse. 54
Ordering a horse after exercise. 55
Of ordering, dyeting, taking up, cloathing, dressing, watering and feeding the Running-horse. 55, & 56
Of his exercise by ayring and coursing. 56, & 57
Of sweats. 58
Of scowring him. 59
Ordering after exercise. ib.
Generall rules for a Running horse. ib.
Generall rules for a travelling-horse. 60
How to cure all inward sicknesses. 63
Of the Head-ach, Frenzie, or Staggers. 63
Of the sleeping evill. ib.
Of the Falling-evill, Planet-stricke, Night-mare, or Palsey. 64
Of the generall Crampe, or convulsion of sinewes. ib.
Of any Cold or Cough, wet or dry, or for any consumption or putrefaction of the Lungs whatsoever. 65
Of the running Glaunders, or mourning of the Chine. 64
Of hide-bound or consumption of the flesh. 66
Of the brest-paine, or any sicknesse of the heart. ib.
Of tyred Horses. ib.
Of diseases of the stomacke, as Surfets, loathing of meat, or drinke. 67
Of jaundring in the body. ibid.
Of the Hungry-evill. 68
Of diseases in the Liver, &c. ibid.
Of the Yellowes, and diseases of the Gall. ib.
Of the sickenesse of the [illegible]

ſpleene. p. 69
Of the Dropſie, or evill habit of the body. ibid.
Of the Chollicke, Belly-ake, or Belly-bound. p. 70
Of the Laxe, or Bloudy flyxe. ibid.
Of the falling of the Fundament. 71
Of Bots, and Wormes of all ſorts. ib.
Of paine in the kidneyes, paine-piſſe, and ſtone. ib.
Of the ſtrangullion. ib.
Of piſſing bloud. p. 72
Of the Colt-evill, wattering of the yard, falling of the yard, ſhedding of ſeed. ib.
Of the particular Diſeaſes in Mares, as barrenneſſe, conſumption, rage of love, caſting foales, haſtineſſe to foale, and to make a Mare caſt her foale. ib.
Of Drinking venoms, &c. p. 73
Of Suppoſitaries, Gliſters, and Purgations. ib.
Of wettings, & frictions. 74
Of all the diſeaſes in the eyes. 75
Of the Impoſtume in the eare, Poſe-evill, fiſtula, ſwelling after bloud-letting, any gald-backe, canker, ſit-faſt, wennes, navell-gall, &c. p. 75
Of the Vives. ibid.
Of the ſtrangle, bile, botch, or impoſtume. 76
Of the Canker in the noſe, or any other part. ib.
Of ſtaunching bloud in any part. ib.
Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, as bloudy-rifts, Iiggs, Lampas, Camerie, inflammation, tongue-hurt, or the barbs. 77
Of paine in the teeth, or loſe teeth. ib.
Of the cricke in the necke. ib.
Of the falling of the creſt, maungineſſe in the maine, or ſhedding of haire. 78
Of paine in the withers. ibid.
Of ſtraying the backe, or weakneſſe in the backe. ib.
Of the itch in the taile, ſcab, maungineſſe, or farcie. 79
Of any halting whatſoever, &c. ib.
Of foundring in the feet. 80
Of the ſplent, curbe, bone-ſpaven,

Spaven, or any knob, or bony excreſſion, or ringbone. 80

Of the Mallander, Sellander, Paines, Scratches, Mallet, Mules, Crowne-ſcab, &c. 81

Of an upper attaint, or neather, or any over-reaching. ibid.

Of all the infirmities of, in, or about the hoves, &c. 82

Of the blood ſpaven, bough, bony, or any other unnaturall ſwelling. ib.

Of Winde-galls. 83

Of enterfearing, ſhacklegall, &c. ib.

Hurts on the Cronet, as quilter bone, or matlong. 84

Of wounds in the foot, gravelling, pricking, figge, retrait, or cloying. ib.

To draw out ſtub or thorne. ib.

Of any Aubury or Tetter 84

Of the cords, or ſtring-halt. 85

Of ſpur-galling, &c. ib.

To heale any old ſore or wound. ib.

Of ſinewes cut. ib.

Of eating away dead fleſh. ib.

Of knots in joynts. 86

Of venomous wounds, &c. ib.

Of Lice or nits. ib.

To defend a Horſe from flies. ib.

Of bones broke, or out of joynt. ib.

Of drying or skinning ſores when they are almoſt whole. 87

A moſt famous receit to make a Horſe that is leane, and that is full of inward ſickneſſe, ſound and fat in fourteene dayes. ibid.

To make a white ſtarre. 88

Of the Bull, Calfe, Cow, or Oxe.

OF the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe, &c. 88

The Countreyes for breed. 88

Of not mixing and mixing breeds. 89

The ſhape of the Bull. ib.

The uſe of the Bull. 90

The

The shape of the Cow. 90
The use of the Cow. ib.
Of Calves and their nourishing. ib.
Observations for Calves. ib.
Of the Oxe, and his use. 91
Of the Oxes food for labour. 92
Oxen to feed for the Butcher. ib.
To preserve Cattell in health. ib.
Of the feaver in Cattell. 93
Of any inward sickenesse. ib.
Of the diseases in the head, as Sturdy, &c. ib.
Of all the diseases in the eyes of Cattell, &c. 14
Of diseases in the mouth, as barbs, bleanes, &c. 95
Of diseases in the necke, as being galled, bruised, swolne, cloth, &c. ib.
Of the Pestilence, gargill, or murraine. 96
Of misliking or leannesse. 96
Of diseases in the guts, as fluxe, costivenesse. 97
Of pissing blood. ib.
Of dropping nostrills, or any cold. ib.
Of all manner of swellings. ib.
Of the worme in the taile. 98
Of any cough or shortnesse of breath. 98
Of any Impostume, Bile, or Botch. ib.
Of diseases in the sinewes, as weaknesse, stifnesse, or sorenesse. ib.
Of the generall scab, particular scab, or scurfe. 99
Of the hide-bound, or dry-skin. ib.
Of diseases in the Lunges, as Lung-growne, &c. ib.
Of the biting with a mad dog, or other venomous beast. 100
Of the falling downe of the pallat. 101
Of any paine in the hoofe, as the sunle, &c. 101
Of all kindes of bruisings. 101
Of swallowing hens-dung, or any poison. 101
Of killing Lice or Ticks. ibid.
Of the dew-bowle. 102
Of the losse of the Cud. ib.
Of the killing of all sorts of Wormes. 103
Of vomiting blood. ib.

Of

Of the Gout. 103
Of Milting. ib.
Of provoking a beast to pisse. 104
Of the overflowing of the gall. ib.
Of a beast that is goared. ib.
Of the Cow that is wethered. ib.
Of drawing out of thornes, or stubt. 104
Of purging Cattell. 105
Of being sleven-runne. 105
Of faintnesse. 105
Of breeding milke in a Cow. ib.
Of bones out of ioynt or broken. 106
Of the rot in beasts. ib.
Of the Pantas. ib.
Of all manner of wounds. 106

Of the Sheepe.

OF Sheepe, their use, choice, shape, and preservation. 107
Of the staple of woull. 108
Of the choice of Sheepe. ibid.
Of the leare of Sheepe. ib.
The shape of Sheepe. 109
When Ewes should bring forth. ib.
Ordering of Lambes. 110
Needfull observations. ib.
The preservation of Sheepe. 111
The signes to know a sound Sheepe, and an unsound. 112
Of sickenesse in Sheepe, as the Feaver, &c. 112
Of the generall scab. ib.
Of killing maggots. 113
Of the Red-water. ib.
Of lung-sicke, or any cough, or cold. ib.
Of the wormes in the claw, or in any other part. 114
Of Wild-fire. ib.
Of the diseases of the gall, as Choller, Iaundies, &c. ib.
Of the tough flegme, or stoppings. ib.
Of the bones broken or out of ioynt. 115

Of

Of any ſickeneſſe in Lambes. 115
Of the ſturdy, turning evill, or more-ſound. ib.
Of all diſeaſes in the eyes in generall ib.
Of water in a Sheeps belly. 116
Of the tagd or belt Sheepe. ib.
Of the poxe in Sheepe. ib.
Of the wool-evill or crampe. ib.
Of making Ewes love her owne Lambe, or any other Ewes Lambe. 117
Of licking up poyſon. ib.
Of Lambes ſeaſed ſicke. ib.
Of making an Ewe to be eaſily delivered. 118
Of teeth looſe. ib.
Of increaſing milke. ib.
Of the ſtaggers or leaſe ſickeneſſe. ib.
Of all ſorts of wormes. 119
Of the looſe of the cud. ib.
Of ſaving Sheepe from the rot. ib.
A few precepts for the Shepherd. 120

Of Goats.

OF Goats, and their Natures. 121
The ſhape of Goats. 122
The ordering of Goats. ib.
Of any toward ſickneſſe, as the peſtilence, &c. 123
Of the dropſie. 123
Of ſtopping the teats. 124
Of Goats that cannot kid 124
Of the Tetter, or dry ſcabbe. ib.
Of gelding Kids. ib.
Of the itch in Goats. 125
Of the tuell-ſtopping. 125
Of the Staggers. 126

Of Swine.

OF all manner of Swine. 126
The nature of Swine. ibid.
Of the choice and ſhape of Swine 127
Of the uſe and profit of Swine

swine. 128
Of the Fever, or any hidden sickneſſe in Swine. 129
Of the Murraine, peſtilence, or catarrhe. 130
Of the gall in Swine. ib.
Of the Meazles. ib.
Of the Impoſtumes in any part. ibid.
Of vomiting. 131
Of leanneſſe, miſlike, ſcurfe, or mangineſſe. ib.
Of the ſleeping evill ib.
Of paine in the Milt. 132
Vnnaturalneſſe in Swine. ib.
Of the Laxe or Fluxe. ib.
Of the lugging of Swine with dogs. 133
Of the poxe in Swine. ib.
Of killing Maggots in any part. ib.
Of feeding Swine either for Bacon or Lard. ib.
Of feeding Swine in Woodcountreyes. ib.
Of feeding Swine in Champion Countreyes. 134
Of feeding at the reeke. ib.
Of feeding Swine, in, or about great cities. 135
Of feeding Hogs for Lard, or Bores for Brawne. ib.

Of Conies.

OF tame Conies in generall. 138
The nature of the Conie. ib.
Of Boxes for tame Conies. 139
Of the choyce and profit of rich Conies. 139. & 140
Of the feeding and preſervation of Conies. 140
Of the rot amongſt Conies. 141
Of madneſſe in Conies. ibid.

The Table of the ſecond Booke.

Of Poultry.

Of the Dunghill Cocke, Henne, Chicken, and Capon. 144
Of the dunghill-Cocke. ib.
Of the choyce and ſhape of the Cocke. 145
Of the Henne, her choice and ſhape. ibid.
Of ſetting Hennes. ib.
Of the choyce of Egges. ib.
Of Chickens. 146
Of feeding and cramming chickens. ib.
Of preſerving Egges. 148
Of gathering Egges. ib.
Of the Capon, and when to carve him. ib.
Of the Capon to leade Chickens. ib.
Of feeding and cramming Capons. 148
Of the Pippin Poultry. 149
Of the roupe. ib.
Of the fluxe. 150
Of ſtopping in the belly. ib.
Of lice in Poultry. ib.
Of ſtinging with venomous wormes. ib.
Of all ſore eyes ib.
Of hennes which crow. 151
Of Hens which eat their Egges. ibid.
Of keeping a Hen from ſitting. ibid.
Of making Hens lay ſoone and oft. ib.
Of making hens leane. ib.
Of the Crow-trodden. 152
Of the Hen-houſe and ſcituation. ib.

Geeſe.

Of the Geeſe in generall. 153
Of the Choice of Geeſe. 153
Of laying egs, and ſitting. ib

Of

Of the ordering of Goslings. 154
Of greene Geese, and their fatting. ib.
Of Ganders. ib.
Of fatting of elder Geese. 155
Of gathering of Geese-feathers. ib.
Of the gargell in Geese ib.

Of Turkies.

OF Turkies in generall 156
Of the choyce of the Turkey-Cocke. ib.
Of the Turkey hen, and her sitting. 156
Of the feeding of Turkeyes. 157

Of Water-fowle, and others.

OF the tame Ducke. 157
Of wilde Duckes, and their ordering. 158
Of Swans, and their feeding. ib.
Of Peacockes and Peahennes. 159
Of the tawe Pigeon, or rough-footed. 160
Of nourishing and fatting Hearnes, Puets, Gulls, and Bitters. 161
Of feeding Partridge, Pheasant, and Quaile. 162
Of Godwits, Knots, Grey-Plovers, or Curlewes. 162
Of Black-birds, Throstles, Fellfares, &c. 163

Of Hawkes.

OF Hawkes in generall, of all kindes. 164
Of Scowrings. 165
Of Impostumes in Hawkes. 166
Of sore eyes in Hawkes. 166
Of the Pantas. 167
Of casting the Gorge. ib.
Of all sorts of Wormes or Flanders. ib.

Of all ſwellings in Hawkes feet. 167
Of the breaking of a pounce. 168
Of bones broke, or out of joynt. ibid.
Of all inward bruiſings. ib.
Of killing Lice. ib.
Of the Kie. 169
Of the Frounce. ib.
Of the Rheume. 170
Of the Formicæ. ib.
Of the Fiſtula. 171
Of the privie evill. ib.
Of all ſorts of wounds. 172
Of the Apoplexie, or falling evill. 173
Of the purging of Hawkes. ib.
Of a Hawke that cannot mute. 174
The aſſuredſt ſignes to know when a Hawke is ſicke. 174
Of the Fever in Hawkes. 175
Of helping a Hawke that cannot digeſt. ib.
Of the Gout in Hawkes. 176
Of the ſtaunching of bloud. ibid.

Of Bees.

Of Bees in generall. 177
Of the nature of Bees. ibid.
Of the Bee-hive. 178
Of the trimming of the Hive. ib.
Of the placing of Hives. 179
Of the caſting of Bees, and ordering the ſwarmes. 179
Of ſelling Hives. 181
Of the preſervation of weake ſtockes. ib.
An excellent ſecret concerning Bees. 182

Of Fiſhing.

A plat-forme for Fiſh-ponds. 183
Of fiſhing in generall. 184
Of the taking of all ſorts of Fiſh, with Nets, or otherwiſe. 186

A Short Table expounding all the hard words in this Booke.

A

Auripigmentum, or *Orpment*, is a yellow hard substance to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Aristolochia-longa, otherwise called red *Madder*, is an herbe growing almost in every field.

Aristolochia-rotunda, is the herbe called *Galingale*.

Agrimony, or *Egrimony*, is an usuall and knowne herbe.

Ameos, or *Comin-royall*, is an herbe of some called *Bullwort*, *Bishops-weed*, or *Herb-william*.

Anise, is that herbe which beares *Anyse-seeds*.

Anet, of some called *Dill*, is an herbe like *Fennell*, only the seeds are broad like *Orenge seeds*.

Agnus-castus, of some called *Tutesaine*, is and an herbe with reddish leaves, and sinewy like *Plantaine*.

Ægyptiacum, is a reddish *Vngwent* to bee bought at the Pothecaries, and is soveraigne for *Fistulaes*.

Assafœtida, a stinking strong gumme to bee bought at the Pothecaries.

Adraces, or *Adarces* is that *Salt* which is ingendred on the salt Marishes by the violence of the Sunnes heat after the tide is gone away.

Asterion, is an herbe growing amongst stones,

walls, or ſuch like, it appeareth beſt by night, it hath yellow flowers like *Foxegloves*, and the leaves are round and blewith.

Aloes, is a bitter gumme to bee bought at the Pothecaries.

B

Betin, or *Beets*, is an herbe with long broad leaves indented, and growes in hedge-rowes.

Bolarmoniacke, is a red hard earthy ſubſtance, to bee bought at the Pothecaries, and is of a cold and binding nature.

Broomewort, is an herbe with browne coloured leaves, and beareth a blew flower, and moſt commonly growes in woods.

C

Creſſes are of two kindes, *Water-Creſſes*, and *Land-Creſſes*: they have broad ſmooth leaves, and the firſt growes in moyſt places, the latter in Gardens, or by high-wayes.

Comin, ſee *Ameos*.

Carthamus is an herbe in taſte like *Saffron*, and is called *baſtard-Saffron*, or *mocke-Saffron*.

Calamint is an ordinary herbe, and groweth by ditches ſides by high-wayes, and ſometimes in Gardens.

Coriander is an herbe which beareth a round little ſeed.

Cives, are a ſmall round herbe growing in Gardens, like little young *onions*, or *Scallions* not above a weeke old.

D

Diapente, a ſoveraigne powder made of five equall ſimples, as *Bay-berries*, *Ivorie*, *Ariſtolochia-rotunda*, *Myrrhe*

Myrrhe, and *Gentiana*, may bee bought of the Pothecary.

Dettony is an herbe called *Pepper-wort*, or *Horſe-radiſh*, and groweth in many open fields.

Dragon is an herbe common in every Garden.

E

Elecampana is an herbe of ſome called *Horſe helme*, and growes almoſt in every field, and every Garden.

Eye-bright is an herbe growing in every Meadow.

F

Fenegreeke is an herbe which hath a long ſlender trayling ſtalke, hollow within, and ſowne in Gardens, but eaſieſt to be had at the Pothecaries.

Ferne oſmund is an herbe, of ſome called *Water-ferne*, hath a triangular ſtalke, and is like *Polipody*, and it growes in bogs and hollow grounds.

G

Galingale, ſee *Ariſtolochia rotunda*.

H

Horſe-mint is an herb that growes by waters ſides, and is called *water-mint*, or *Brooke-mint*.

Horſe-helme, ſee *Elecampana*.

Houſe-leeke is a weed which growes upon the tops of houſes that are thatcht, and are like unto a ſmall *Artichocke*.

Herbe-Robert hath leaves like *Herbe-Bennet*, and ſmall flowers of a purple colour, and growes in moſt common fields and gardens.

I

Ivory is the ſhavings of the *Elephants* tooth, or the old *Harts* or *Stags* horne, being the ſmooth white thereof.

K

Knot-grasse is a long round weed, with little round smooth leaves, and the stalke very knotty and rough, winding and wreathing one seame into another very confusedly, and groweth for the most part in very moyst places.

L

Lettice is a common sallet herbe in every garden.

Lollium is that weed which wee call *Cockell*, and groweth amongst the corne in every field.

Liverwort is a common herbe in every garden.

M

Myth is a weed that growes amongst corne, and is called of some *Hogs-Fennell*.

Myrrhe is a gumme to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Mawn-dragge is an herbe which growes in gardens, and beareth certeine yellow Apples, from whence the Pothecaries draw a soveraigne oyle for broken bones.

N

Neepe, see *Calamint*.

O

Origanum is an herbe called *Wilde-Marjoram*, and growes both in open fields, or in low copses.

Orifice is the mouth, hole, or open passage of any wound or ulcer.

Opopanax, a drugge usuall to be bought at the Pothecaries.

P

Pitch of Burgundy is *Rosen*, and the blacker the better.

Plantaine is a fat leafe and finewie, growing close

to

to the ground, and is called *Whey-bred* leafe.

Puliall-royall is an herb that groweth both in fields and gardens, and is beſt when it flowreth.

Patch-greaſe is that tallow which is gotten from the boyling of Shoomakers ſhreads.

Q

Quinque folio, of ſome called *Cinque-foyle*, is that herbe which is called *Five-leaved* graſſe.

R

Red Oaker is a hard red ſtone which wee call *Riddle*, *Orell*, *Marking-ſtone*.

S

Seledine, or *Tetterwort* is a weed growing in the bottome of hedges, which being broke, a yellow juyce will drop and runne out of it.

Shirwit is an herbe with many ſmall leaves, and growes moſt in gardens.

Stubwort is an herbe which growes in woody places, and is called *Wood-Sorrell*.

Sanguis Draconis is a hard red gumme to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Sperma-Ceti is the ſeed of the *Whale*, excellent for inward bruiſes, and to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Stonecrop is a greene weed growing on the tops of walles.

Salarmoniacke is a drug to be bought at the Pothecaries.

T

Tuſilaginis is that weed which we call *Colts-foot*.

Triapharmicon a compoſition made of three ſimples, and to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Turnemericke is a yellow Simple, of ſtrong ſavour, to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Verd-

V

Verdi-greese is a greene fatty gumme drawne from *Copper*, and is to be bought at the Pothecaries.

W

Woodrose, or *Wild-Eglantine*, is that small thinne flower which growes upon *Bryers* in Woods or Hedges.

Y

Arrow is an herbe called the *Water-violet*, and growes in Lakes or Marish grounds.

FINIS.

The Diviſion of the titles intreated *of in theſe Bookes following.*

FIrſt, of the *Horſe*, his Nature, Diſeaſes, and Cures; with the whole Art of Riding, and ordering all ſorts of *Horſes*, from *fol.* 1. to 88.

2. Of the *Bull, Cow, Calfe*, or *Oxe*, ther breeding, feeding, and curing. from *fol.* 88. to 107.

3. Of *S*heepe, their choyce, uſe, ſhape, infirmities, and preſervation. from *fol.* 107. to 120.

4. Of *Goats*, their nature, ſhape, ordering, and curing, from *fol.* 121. to 126.

5. Of *Swine*, their choice, breeding, curing, and feeding, in either Champion or Wood countreyes. from *fol.* 126. to 138.

6. Of tame *Coneyes*, from *fol.* 138. to 144.

7. Of *Poultry*; their ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing all the diſeaſes to them incident. from *fol.* 144. to 163.

8. Of *Hawkes*, either ſhort-winged, or long-winged; the generall cures for their diſeaſes and infirmities. from *fol.* 164. to 176.

Of

9. Of *Bees*, their ordering, profit, and preservation, from *fol.* 177. to 183.

10. Of *Fishing*, and making *Fish ponds*, from *fol.* 183. to the end.

Published by Authority.

THE GENERALL CVRE and Order of all HORSES: As alſo the whole Art of Riding great Horſes, with the breeding, breaking, and ordering of them. Together with the manner how to vſe the Running, Hunting, and ambling Horſe, before, in, and after their Trayll.



Of the Horſe in generall, the choice, ſeaſon, ſecurall ages, Ordering, Diet, and preſervation of health in him.

and at the deareſt rate purchaſe all the receipts & ſimples declared in the whole Volume. For in ſober truth, this booke is for every Gentleman, Husbandman, and good mans pocket being a memory which a man carrying about him will when is is ſtill occaſion, give a man full ſatisfaction, whether it be in the Field, in the towne, or any other place, where a man is moſt unprovided.

Names of Horſes.

And now for as much as the Horſe of all Creatures is the nobleſt, ſtrongeſt, And apteſt to doe a man the beſt and worthieſt ſervices, both in Peace and War, I thinke it not amiſſe firſt to begin with him. Therefore for his nature in generall, He is valiant, ſtrong, nimble, and above all other beaſts moſt apt and able to endure the extremeſt labours: the moiſt quality of his compoſition being ſuch, that neither extreme heat doth dry up his ſtrength, nor the violence of cold freeze the warme temper of his moving ſpirits, but that where there is any temperate government, there he withſtandeth all effects of ſickneſſe, with an uncontrolled conſtancy. He is moſt gentle and loving to man, apt to be taught, and not forgetfull when any leſſon is lodged in his braine. He is watchfull above all other beaſts, and [illegible] given to much lightneſſe [illegible] offended with nothing ſo much as [illegible]

The ſhapes of Horſes and their ſhapes.

Now for the choyce of the beſt Horſe, [illegible] according to the ends for which you will employ him. If therefore you would have a Horſe fondeſt Warres, you ſhall chuſe him that is of a good tall ſtature, with a comly long head, and ouerſwelling fore-head, a large ſparkling eye, the white whereof is ouer-run with his eye-browes, and not at all [illegible] ſmall eares, [illegible] ſhort, a ſmall thinne nape, [illegible] and pricking, if in bolding, well carried,

carryed, and ever moving, it is tolerable, but if dull or hagging, most hatefull: a deepe necke, large creſt, broad breaſt, bending ribs, broad and ſtraight chin, round and full buttocke, with his huckle-bones hid, a taile high and broad, ſet on neither too thicke nor too thinne, for too much hairy ſhewes ſloth, and too little, too much choller and heat: a full ſwelling thigh, a broad, flat, and leane legge, ſhort paſterns, ſtrong joynted, and hollow hoofes, of which the long is beſt, if they be not wierd, and the broad round the worſt.

The beſt colours are Browne-bay, Dapple-gray, Roand, Bright-bay, Blacke with a white neere-foote behind, white farre-foot before, white rache or white ſtar, Cheſſe-nut or Sorrell, with any of thoſe markes, or Dun with a blacke liſt: And of theſe Horſes, for the warres, the courſer of *Naples* is accounted the beſt, the *Almaine*, the *Sardinian*, or the *French*. Colours of Horſes.

If you will chuſe a horſe for a Princes Seat, any ſupreme Magiſtrate, or for any great Lady of ſtate, or woman of eminence, you ſhall chuſe him that is of the fineſt ſhape, the beſt reyne, who naturally beares his head in the beſt place, without the helpe of the mans hand, that is of nimbleſt and eaſieſt pace, gentle to get upon, bold without taking affrights, and moſt familiar and quiet in the company of other horſes: his colour would ever be milke-white, with red fraynes, or without, or elſe faire dapple-gray, with white maine and white taile: And of theſe the *Engliſh* is beſt, then the *Hungarian*, the *Sweetland*, the *Poland*, the *Iriſh*. Horſes for a Princes Seat.

If you will chuſe a horſe only for travell, ever the better ſhape, the better hope, eſpecially looke that his head be leane, eyes ſwelling outward, his necke well riſen, his chin well riſen, his joynts very ſtrong, but above all his paſterns Horſes for Travell.

pasternes short and straight, without bending in his going, and exceeding hollow and rough hoofed: let him be of temperate nature, neither too furious, nor too dull, willing to goe without forcing, and not desirous to run when there is no occasion.

Hunting horses.

If you will chuse a Horse for hunting, let his shape in generall be strong, and well knit together, making equall proportions; for as unequall shapes shew weaknesse, so equall members assure strength and endurance. Your unequall shapes are, a great head to a little necke, a bigge body to a thin burrocke, a large nimble to a little foot, or any of these contraries, or where any member suits not with the whole proportion of the body, or with any limbe next adjoyning. Above all, let your hunting horse have a large leane head, wide nostrils, open chauldy, a bigge Wesland, and the Wind-pipe straight, loose, well covered, and not bent in the pride of his Reyning. The English horse hasterdized with any of the former Races first spoake of, is of all the best.

Running horses.

If you chuse a horse for running, let him have all the finest shape that may be, but above all things let him be nimble, quicke and fiery, apt to flie with the least motion: long shapes are sufferable, for though they shew weaknesse, yet they assure sudden speed. And the best horse for this use, is the *Arabian*, *Barbary*, or his bastard. Iennets are good, but the *Turkes* are better.

Coach horses.

If you will chuse a horse for the Coach, which is called the swift draught, let his shape be tall, broad and well furnisht, not grosse with much flesh, but with the bigneſſe of his bones; especially looke hee have a strong necke, a broad breast, a large chin, sound cleane limbs, and rough hoves: and for this purpose your large English Geldings are best, your Flemish Mare next, and your strong

ston'd

ston'd horses tolerable, Flemish or Friseans.

If you will chuse a horse for passage, that is, for the Packe or Hampers, chuse him that is exceeding strong of body and limbes, but not tall, with a broad backe, out ribs, full shoulders, and thicke withers; for if he be thin in that part, you shall hardly keepe his backe from galling: be sure that he take a long stride with his feete, for their pace being neither trot, nor amble, but rid on a foot pace, he which takes the largest strides, goes with the most ease, and rides his ground fastest. Pack horses.

Lastly, if you will chuse a horse for the Cart or Plough, which is the slow draught, chuse him that is of most ordinary height, for horses in the Cart unequally sorted, never draw at ease, but the tall hang up the low horse. Let them be of good strong portion, big breasted, large bodied, and strong limb'd, by nature rather inclin'd to crave the whip, then to draw more than is needfull. And for this purpose, Mares are most profitable, for besides the effecting of your work, they yearely bring you forth increase; therefore if you intend to your draught with Mares to breed, observe in any wise to have them fair fore-headed, that is, good head, neckle, breast and shoulders, for the rest it is not so regardfull, onely let her body be large, for the biggest commonly Foale hath in the dammes belly, the fairer are his members. And above all things, observe never to put your draught beasts to the saddle, for that alters their pace, and hurts them in their labours. Cart-horses. Of Mares.

Now for the ordering of these several horses fit for the horse for service, during the time of his teaching which is out of the warr, you shall keepe him high and lustily, his food no straw, but good hay, his provender cleane dry oats, or two parts oats and one part beanes, or

Peafe, well dryed and hard, the quantity of halfe a peeke at a watering, mornings, noone and evening is sufficient. In his daies of reſt you ſhall dreſſe him betwixt five and ſixe in the morning, water betwixt ſeven and eight, and feed from nine till after eleaven: in the afternoone you ſhall dreſſe betwixt three and foure, water betwixt foure and five, and give prouender till ſix, then litter at eight, and give food for all night. The night before hee is ridden, you ſhall at nine of clocke at night take away his hay from him; at foure of clocke in the morning give him a handfull or two of Oates, which being eaten, turne him upon his ſtraffle, rub all his body and legges over with dry cloathes, then ſaddle him, and make him fit for his exerciſe. Soone as he is call'd for to be ridden, waſh his fit in faire water, and put to his mouth with all other things neceſſary, draw up his girths, and for that no buckles hurt him: then leade him forth, and as ſoone as he hath been ridden, all ſweating as he is, leade him into his ſtable, and firſt rub him quickly over with dry wiſpes, then take off his ſaddle, and having rubd him all over with dry cloathes, put on his houſing cloth, then ſet on his ſaddle againe, and girt it, then leade him forth, and walke him up and downe in gentle manner, an houre or more, till he be cold; then ſet him up, and after two or three houres faſting, turne him to his meate: then in the afternoone, curry, rub, and dreſſe him, then water him, and order him as aforeſaid.

Ordering of Horſe for Princes, &c.

For ordering of the horſe for a Prince, or great Ladies ſtate, let it be in his time of reſt, like unto the horſe for ſervice: and in his time of labour like the travelling horſe, as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter; onely becauſe hee is to be more choicely kept, I meane in the beautifulleſt manner, his mane lying ſmooth and ſhining, and his whole body without

without any staine or ill-favouredneſſe, you ſhall ever when hee hath beene ridden, and commeth in much ſweating, preſently have him into the ſtable, and firſt rub him downe with cleane wiſps, then taking off his ſaddle, with a ſword blade, whoſe edge is rebated, you ſhall ſtroake his necke and body cleane over, leaving no ſweat nor filth that can be gotten out; then cloath him up, and ſet on the Saddle, and walke him forth as aforeſaid; after, order and diet him as you doe other travelling horſes: drie Oates is his beſt provender, if hee be fat and full; and Oates and Beanes, if hee be poore, for ſubject to loſe his fleſh quickly.

Ordering of travelling horſes.

For your travelling horſe, you ſhall feede him with the fineſt Hay in the Winter, and the ſweeteſt graſſe in Summer. His provender would be dry Oates, Beanes, Peaſe or Bread, according to his ſtomack: in the time of reſt, halfe a pecke at a watering is ſufficient, in the time of his labour, as much as hee will eate with a good ſtomacke. When you travell him, water two houres before you ride, then rub, dreſſe, and laſtly feed, then bridle up, and let him ſtand an houre before you take his backe. Travell moderately in the morning, till his wind be rock'd, and his limbes warmed, then after doe as your affaires require. Be ſure at night to water your horſe two miles before you come to your journies end; then the warmer you bring him to his Inne, the better: walke not, nor waſh not at all, the one doth beget colds, the other foundring in the feete or body: but ſet him up warme, well ſtopt, and ſoundly rub'd with cleane litter. Give no meate whileſt the outward parts of your horſe are hot or wet with ſweate, as the eare-rootes, the flanckes, the necke, or under his chaps: but being dry, rub and feede him according to the goodneſſe of his

stomacke. Change of food begetteth a loathnes, so doth the washing of the tongue or nostrils with Vinegar, white and salt, or Mannes urine. Stop not your horses fore-feet with Cowes dung, till hee be sufficiently cole, and that the blood and humours which were dispersed, be setled into their proper places. Looke well to his backe, that the saddle hurt him not, to his girths that they gall not, and to his shooes that they be large, fast, and safe.

Ordering of hunting-horses.

For the ordering of your hunting-horse, let him in the time of his rest have all the quietnesse that may be, much litter, much meate, and much dressing: water ever by him, and leave him to sleep as long as he pleaseth. Keepe him rounding rather full than hard, and looke that he be well coloured and bright, for darknesse shewes greate and rotten fleshy and heating. Let exercises and madnesse of sweate bee after, but his usuall scourings, and let bread of cleane Beanes, or Beanes and Wheat equally mixt, be his best food, and Beanes and Oates the most ordinary.

Ordering of running-horses.

For the ordering of your running-horse, let him have no more meate than to suffice nature, drinke once in foure and twenty houres, and dressing every day once at noone onely. Let him have much moderate exercise, as morning and evening ayrings, or the fetching of his Water, and know no violence but in his courses onely. Let him stand darke and warme, have many cloathes, and much litter, being wheat straw only. If he be very fat, scoure oft: if of reasonable state, scoure seldome: if leane, then scoure but with a sweet wash onely. Be sure your horse be empty before he course, and let his food be the finest, lightest, and quickest of digestion that may be: the sweats are more wholesome that are given abroad, and the cooling most naturall which is given before hee come into the stable. Keepe his limbes with coole oyntments,

ments, and by no meanes let any hot spice come in his body: if the goodwife inwardly, wash it neare into foame: if hee gray dooke, then give him straw in more abundance. Burning of sweet perfume in the stable is wholesome, and any thing you shall doe about your horse, or give unto your horse, the more neate, cleanly, and sweete hee is, the better he nourisheth.

Ordering of Coach-horses.

For ordering the Coach-horse, let him have good dressing twice a day, hay and provender his belly full, and litter enough to rumble in, and he cannot chuse but prosper. Let him be pulled and washt after travell, for by reason of their long occasions to stand still, they must be inured to all hardnesse, although it be not to unwholesome. Their best food is sweet hay, and well dried Beanes and Oates, or Beane-bread: Looke well to the strength of their shooes, and the galling of their harnesse: Keepe their legges cleane, especially about the hinder feetlocks, and when they are in the house, let them stand warmely clothed.

Ordering of the Packe and Cart-horse.

For the ordering of the Pack-horse, or the Cart-horse, they need no washing, walking, or houres of fasting; onely dresse them well, looke to their shooes and backs, and then fill their bellies, and they will doe their labour. Their best food is sweet hay, chaffe and Pease, or Oate-hulls and Pease, or chopt straw and Pease mixt together: once a weeke to give them warme Graines and Salt is not amisse, for their labour will prevent the breeding of wormes, or such like mischiefes.

For the preservation of all Horses.

Now for the generall preservation of horses health, it is good whilst a horse is in youth and strength, to let him blood twice in the yeare, that is, beginning of the Spring and begining of the Fall, when you may best afford him a weeks rest. After you have let him blood, two daies af-

ter

ter give him a comfortable drench, as two ſpoonfulls of *Diapente*, or ſuch like, (which is called horſe *Methridate*) in a quart of ſtrong Ale. Vſe oft to perfume his head with Frankincenſe, and in the heat of Summer uſe oft to ſwim him. Let a fat horſe drinke oft, and a little at once, and a leane horſe whenſoever hee hath appetite. Much rubbing is comfortable, and cheereth every member. Be ſure to let your horſe eate graſſe once in a yeere, for that cooleth the blood, ſcoures away groſſe humors, and gives great ſtrength and nouriſhment to the body. If notwithſtanding all theſe principles, your horſe fall into ſickneſſe and diſeaſes, then looke into the Chapters following, and you ſhall finde the trueſt, beſt approved, and the moſt familiar medicines for all manner of infirmities, that ever were knowne or publiſhed, except my Maſter-piece.

Chap. 2.

Of riding in generall, and of all the particular knowledges belonging to the Art of riding of a great Horſe, or Horſe for ſervice or pleaſure.

Imperfect uſe of this recreation.

HAving ſpoken ſomething already of horſes, it now followes wee ſay ſomething of the commendable exerciſe of riding of great horſes, which in the very action it ſelfe ſpeaketh Gentleman to all that are performers or doers of the ſame. And although our Engliſh Gentry from a ſloath in their induſtry, aime for the moſt part at no more skill than the riding of a ridden and perfect horſe, which is but onely the ſetting forth of another mans vertue, and thereby making themſelves richer in diſcourſe than action: yet our Engliſh Husbandman, or good-man, whom I ſeeke to make exact and perfect in all

all things, shall not onely recreate himselfe by riding the horses whom other men have made perfect, but shall by his owne practice bring his horse from utter ignorance to the best skill that can be desired in his motions, wherein hee shall finde a two-fold pleasure, the one, an excellent contentment to his minde, that hee can performe so worthy an action, without the chargeable assistance of others: and the other a healthfull support to his body, when by such recreation his spirits and inward faculties are revived and inflamed. The pleasure of Riding.

But now me thinkes I heare some say, that I have utterly taken away the tune of this string, I have stricken so oft upon it, and that indeede there can be no delight where there is no variation: and that surely I cannot vary any more upon this plaine song, but the world will finde discord either in this, or my former descants. But let them not deceive themselves, for my building standeth on a firme rocke and I know both shall be worthily justifiable: only this I must informe all men, that in times past, long since, when our first rules of Horse-manship were given unto us, our Masters were not so skilfull in the abilities of horses performances as we are, but measured them by the proportions of their owne weaker natures, and thence became so too much tender over them, that they neither respected the greatnesse of their owne labours, nor the length of time, before they assumed to their desires, so in the end they might aspire to their wishes with safety and full satisfaction: whence it came to passe that in those times, and even now in these, (chiefly amongst those which are meerely riders, and no Keepers) there is no lesse time allowed to the making up of a perfect horse, than two yeeres, when we know, and my selfe from experience can justifie the same, that if the The Authors Apology.

Rider

Rider can keepe as well as Ride, that is, give as well directions for the preservation of a horses health, and the avoydance of surfeites and sicknesse, as put in practice artfully every violence to be used in his lessons, he may very well make up a perfect horse in three moneths, fit either for pleasure or battell, which is the full scope and end of this Treatise: wherein I would not have any man expect either new Rules, or a contradiction of any already set downe by men of practice and knowledge in the Art, but onely a straightning or drawing them together into a much narrower compasse, giving satisfaction to our desires, and finishing up our worke with speede, which before was almost lost or neglected, with the length of our Labours, as you shall fully perceive by this discourse which followeth.

The taming of a young Colt.

First then to speak of the taming of a young colt, which is as it were the preface or introduction to the Art of Riding: you shall after he hath beene in the house a weeke, or a fortnight, and is familiar with the man, and will without patiently indure currying, combing, rubbing, clawing, and handling in every part and member of his body, without any shew of rebellion or knavishnesse, which you shall compasse by all gentle and easie meanes, doing nothing about him suddenly or rashly, but with leisure and moderation: then you shall offer him a Saddle, which you shall set in the manger before him, that he may smell of it, and looke upon it, and you shall gingle the girths & stirropps about his eares, to make him careless of the noise, then with all gentlenesse, after you have rub'd his sides therewithall, you shall set it on his back, and gird it gently on, and then place his Crooper with all ease; which done, you shall take a sweet watering cretch, wallit, and annoynted with honey and salt,

His sadling and bridling.

and

and put it into his mouth, placing it to hang directly a-bove his tuſh, and as it were a little leaning thereupon: this you ſhall doe in the morning as ſoone as you have dreſt him, and then thus ſadled and bridled you ſhall leade him forth, and water him in your hand abroad: then bringing him in, and after hee hath ſtood a little reyned upon his trench an houre or more, take away the bridle and ſaddle, and let him goe to his meate till the evening: then lead him forth (as before) with the ſaddle to the water, then when he is ſet up, gently take off his ſaddle and cheriſh him, and then dreſſe him, and cloath him up for all night.

The next day ſaddle and bridle him as before ſaid, and put on him a ſtrong Muſrole of writhen Iron, or a ſharp Cavezan, and a Martingall, which you ſhall buckle at ſuch length that he may no more but feele it when he jerketh up his head, and then leade him forth into ſome new ploughed field, or ſoft ground, and there after you have made him trot a good ſpace about you in your hand, and thereby taken away from him all his wantonneſſe, and knaviſh diſtractions you ſhall offer your foote to the ſtirrop, at which if hee ſhew any diſtaſte, either in body or countenance, you ſhall then courſe him about againe: then offer againe, and with leiſure riſe halfe way up, and goe downe againe: at which if hee ſhrinke, correct him as before, but if hee take it patiently, then cheriſh him, and ſo mount into the ſaddle, which done, after cheriſhing, light downe againe, and give him bread or graſſe to eate: then looke that your girths be well girted, and ſtrait, that the crooper be ſtrong and of juſt length, that the bridle hang even, and in his due place without inward or outward offence, that your ſtirrops be fit, and generally all things without offence, either to your

The firſt backing.

your ſelfe or to the beaſt, and then as before, mount his backe, ſeate your ſelfe juſt and even in the ſaddle, make the reynes of your bridle of equall length, carry your rod without offence to his eye, in your right hand, the point either directly upright, or thwarted towards your left ſhoulder. Then having cheriſht him, let the Groome which before led him, having his hand on the chaffe halter, leade him forward a dozen or twenty paces, then gently ſtraining your hand, with the helpe of the foote-man, make him ſtand ſtill, then cheriſh him, and leade him forward againe, and doe this five or ſixe times one after another, till by continuall uſe you make him of your owne accord (without the foot-mans helpe) by giving your body, and thruſting your legs forward, goe forward, which as ſoone as he doth, you ſhall ſtay him, and cheriſh him, and then ſitting on his backe, let your foot-man lead him home, and bring him to the blocke, where after you have cheriſht him, you ſhall gently alight, and cauſe him to be led up, and well dreſt, and meated. The next day you ſhall bring him out as before, and in all points take his backe as aforeſaid, and by the helpe of the foot-man trot him forth-right halfe a mile at leaſt, then let the foot-man lay off his hand, and walke by him, till you have of your ſelfe trotted him forth another halfe mile, then cheriſh him, and make the foot-man give him ſome graſſe or bread to eate, and then taking a large compaſſe, trot him home, and bring him to the blocke as before, and there alight, and ſo ſet him up.

The third day let your footman light upon ſome ſpare jade, and then bringing your colt to the blocke, take his backe gently, and after you have cheriſht him, the other riding before you, follow him forth-right a mile, ever and anone at the end of twenty or thirty ſcore, ſtopping

the

the colt gently, cheriſhing him, and making him yeeld and goe backe a ſtep or two, and then putting him forward againe, till he be ſo perfect, that with the leaſt motion he will goe forward, ſtop, and retire, which will be effected in two daies more: in which ſpace if he chance at any time to ſtrike or rebell, you ſhall make him which rides before you take the ſpare reyne, and leade him forward whileſt you give him two or three good laſhes under the belly, and then being in his way, take the ſpare reyne to your ſelfe againe: and thus you ſhall doe till all faults be amended: then you ſhall ſpare your horſeman or guide, and onely by your ſelfe for three or foure daies more, rot him every morning and afternoone, at leaſt a mile or two forward, uſing him onely to ſtop and retire, and bringing him home a contrary way to that you went forth, till he be ſo perfect and willing, that hee will take his way how or in what manner your ſelfe pleaſeth, ever obſerving to mount and diſmount at the blocke only, except ſome ſpeciall occaſion conſtraine you to the contrary. This you may very well bring to paſſe the firſt weeke of the Horſes riding.

The three main points of a Horſemans skill.

As ſoone as you ſee your horſe will receive you to his backe, rot forth-right, ſtop and retire, and doe all this with great patience and obedience, you ſhall then call into your minde the three maine points of a Horſemans knowledge, which are helpes, corrections, and cheriſhing: and for helpes, they conſiſt in three: Firſt the voyce which ſounding ſharply and cheerefully, as crying *vaa, boa, hoy*, and ſuch like, adde a ſpirit and liveline ſſe to the horſe, and lend a great helpe to all his motions: then the bridle, which reſtrained or at liberty, helpes him how to goe, and ſhewes which way to goe:

Of helpes and which they be.

Then

then the Rod which being onely shewed, is a helpe to direct, being onely moved, helpes the quickneſſe, and nimbleneſſe of the motion; and being gently touch with all, helpes the loftineſſe of a horſes ſalts and leaps, and makes him as it were gather all his ſtrength into one point: and laſtly, the calves of the legges, *Stirrop-leathers*, and *Stirreps*, which moved by the horſes ſide, helpes him to nimbleneſſe, ſwiftneſſe, and readineſſe in turning. Some to theſe helpes adde the helpe of the Spurre, chiefly in light ſalts or boundings, but it muſt be done in a juſt and true time, and with ſuch gentle bitterneſſe, that the horſe may underſtand it for a helpe, or elſe he will take diſtaſte, and finding it ſowre like correction, in ſtead of bettering his doings, doe with more diſorder, as to ſprayle with his fore-feet in advancing, to yerke out with one or both his hinder feet in the corvet or bounding, ſhaking of his head, and ſuch like, as will appeare in practice.

Of Corrections and which they be.

Now of Corrections, the moſt principall is the Spur, which muſt not at any time be given triflingly, or itchingly, but ſoundly and ſharply, as oft as juſt occaſion ſhall require: then the Rod which upon diſorder, ſloth, or miſcarriage of the members, muſt be given alſo ſoundly: then the voice, which being delivered ſharply and roughly, as *ha villaine, carrikre, diable*, and ſuch like threatnings, terrifieth the horſe, and maketh him afraide to diſobey: and laſtly the bridle, which now and then ſtricken with a hard chocke in his mouth, reformeth many vices and diſtemperatures of his head, yet this laſt muſt be done ſeldome, and with great diſcretion, for to make a cuſtome thereof, is the ready way to ſpoile a horſes mouth.

Of cherishings.

Now of cherishings, there are generally in uſe but three,

three as firſt the voyce, which being delivered ſmoothly, and lovingly, as crying *holla, ſo boy, there boy there*, and ſuch like, gives the horſe both a chereſulneſſe of ſpirit, and a knowledge that he hath done well: then the hand, by clapping him gently on the neeke or buttocke, or giving him graſſe or other foode to eate after hee hath pleaſed you: and laſtly, the big end of the rod, by rubbing him therewith upon the withers of maine, which is very pleaſing and delightfull to the horſe.

Now after theſe ordinary and actuall helpes, corrections, and cheriſhings, you ſhall have reſpect to the muſrole, or Cavezan, and martingale, which carry in them all the three former both ſeverall and unite: for it is firſt an eſpeciall helpe and guide to every well diſpoſed horſe, for ſetting of his head in a true place, forming of his Reyne, and making him appeare comely and gallant in the eyes of the beholders; then it is a ſharpe correction when a horſe yeeldeth out his noſe, or diſordereth his head any way, or ſtriveth to plunge or runne away with his Rider: And laſtly, it is a great cheriſhing unto the Beaſt, when he yeeldeth his head to your hand, by ſhrinking from his face, and ſo leaving any more to torment him, but when hee offendeth: whence it comes that more from this than any thing elſe, the horſe firſt gaineth the knowledge of his Maſters will, and is deſirous to performe it: therefore you ſhall be very carefull to the placing of this upon the horſe, as firſt, that it hang ſomewhat low, and reſt upon the tender Griſtell of the horſes noſe, whereby the correction may be the ſharper when occaſion requires it; then that it be looſe and not ſtrait, whereby the horſe may feele upon the yeelding in of his head, how the offence goeth from him, and ſo know that onely his owne diſorder is

Of the Muſrole and Martingale.

his owne punishment. Lastly, he shall be carefull to note how hee winneth the horses head, and by those degrees to draw his Martingale straiter and straiter, so as the horse may ever have a gentle feeling of the same, and no more, till his head and reyne be brought to that perfection which you desire, and then there to stay, and keepe the Martingale constantly in that place onely which you shall performe in those few daies which you trot your horse forth-right, being before you bring him to any lesson, more than the knowledge of your selfe, and how to receive you to his backe, and trot forth obediently with you.

Of treading the large ring.

When your horse is brought unto some certainty of reyne, will trot forth-right with you at your pleasure, and by your former exercise therein is brought to breath and delight in his travell, which will grow and increase upon him, as you grow and increase in your labour, then you shall bring him to the treading forth of the large Rings in this manner: First, if he be of heavie and sluggish nature, slothfull and dull, and albeit hee have strength and sufficiency of body, yet if you find him slovenly and unapt, then you shall trot him into some new ploughed field, soft and deepe: but if he be of quicke and of fiery spirit, apt, nimble and ready to learne, then you shall trot him into some sandy or gavelly place, where is strong and firme foot-hold, and there you shall marke out a spacious large Ring at least three score or fourescore paces in compasse, and having walk'd him sixe or seven times about the same on your right hand, you shall then by a little straining of your right reyne, and laying the calfe of your left legge to his side, make a halfe-circle within your Ring upon your right hand, downe to the center or mid point thereof, and then by straining your left

Choyce of ground.

left reyne a little, and laying the calfe of your right legge to his ſide, make another halfe circle to your left hand, from the center to the outmoſt Verge, which two halfe circles contrary turned, will make a perfect Roman S. within the ring; then keeping your firſt large circumference, walke your horſe about on your left hand, as oft as you did on your right, and then change within your ring as you did before to your right hand againe, and then trot him forth on the right hand, then on the left, ſo long as you ſhall thinke convenient. And although our antient Maſters in this *Art* have prefcribed unto us certaine numbers of ring-turnes, and how oft it is meete to goe about on either hand, as if all horſes were of one even ability, yet I would wiſh you to neglect thoſe rules, and onely to practice your horſe in this leſſon, according to his ſtrength of body, ſometimes applying him therein an houre, ſomtimes two, and ſometimes three, more or leſſe according to your diſcretion: for the ſpace of time can neither bring wearineſſe nor tiring: and for your change of hands, you ſhall doe it oft as ſhall ſeeme beſt to your ſelfe, being ever very carefull to give him the moſt exerciſe on that hand, on which he is ever moſt unwillingeſt to goe: and in this leſſon be carefull alſo that hee doe it cheerefully, luſtily and nimbly, quickning and inflaming his ſpirits by all the meanes poſſible: and when you find that he will trot his large rings perfectly, which will queſtionleſſe be in leſſe than a weeks ſpace, being well applied therein, for you muſt not fore-ſlow any morning except the Sabbath, nay, hardly any after-noone: alſo if you find him ſlothfull and heavie, for there is no greater hindrance, than the riders too much tenderneſſe, nor no greater furtherance than a continuall moderate exerciſe: therefore as I ſaid, when he will trot his rings well, then

in the ſame manner, and with the ſame changes, you ſhall make him gallop the ſame Rings, which he ſhall doe alſo with great dexterity, lightneſſe, and much nimbleneſſe, without loſing the leaſt part or grace of his beſt Reyne, nay ſo carefull you ſhall be thereof, that in his gallopping, you ſhall, as it were, gather his body together, and make his Reyne rather better than it was, and make him take up his feet ſo truly and loftily, that not any eye may ſee or perceive a falſhood in his ſtroke, but that his inward feet play before his outward, and each of a ſide follow the other ſo directly, that his gallop may appeare as the beſt grace of all other motions: neither ſhall you enter him into his leſſon raſhly and haſtily, but ſoberly and with diſcretion, making him firſt gallop a quarter of the Ring, then halfe, then three parts, and laſtly the whole ring; neither ſhall you force him into his gallop with violence, or the ſharpneſſe of ſpurs, but with ſpirit and mettall, making him by the lightneſſe and cheerefulneſſe of your owne body, paſſe of his owne accord in his gallop, and eſpecially in his changes, where you may let him feele your leg, and ſhew him your rod on the contrary ſide: and herein is to be noted, that continually thoſe changes (in as much as they are made in a much ſtraiter compaſſe) muſt be done ever with great quickneſſe, and more ſtirring nimbleneſſe than the entire leſſon.

Of gallopping large rings.

Now for the helps neceſſary in theſe large ring-turnes, they conſiſt generally in the *Voyce*, *Rod*, *Calves* of your legs, and the *Bridle*: in the *voyce* by quickning him up, and reviving his ſpirits, when he growes ſlothfull, with theſe words, *How, hey*, or *vis*: In the *Rod*, by ſhewing it him on the contrary ſide, or laying it on the contrary ſhoulder, and ſometimes by ſhaking it over his head, (which is a kind of threatning) chiefely when you make your

Helps in the large ring-turnes.

your changes. In the *calves of your legs*, when you clap them hard to the contrary ſide to which hee turneth, or by ſpringing and jerking your legs forward, hard upon your ſtirrop-leathers, which will quicken him, and make him gather up his limbes better than the ſpur by many degrees: and laſtly, in the *Bridle*, by drawing it in a little ſtraiter, and holding it with ſome more conſtancy, when you put any of your former helpes in uſe, or doe any thing with more life or courage, for that maketh him draw his limbes together, and to ſtraiten his rings with gracely comlineſſe.

For the corrections in theſe large rings, they be divers; as namely, the *Bridle*, *the Spurre*, and the *Rod*, and ſometimes the *voyce*, yet that but ſeldome: for the *bridle*, you ſhall correct your horſe therewith if hee carry his head or chaps awry, making as it were mowes and ill-favoured countenances, giving him now and then a little checke in the mouth, and awakning him from ſuch forgetfull paſſions, or now and then drawing the trench to and fro in his mouth, which will reforme the error; then the ſpur which muſt be laid ſharpe and hard to his ſides, when you finde your helpes will doe no good, but that his ſloth rather more and more increaſeth, or when hee preſſeth and hangeth hard upon your hand, or looſeth the tutch of his reyne, or ſuch like vices: for the rod, when you finde that hee neglecteth the ſhewing or ſhaking of it, or when he diſordeth any of his hinder parts, and will not gather them up comely together, then you ſhall therewith give him a ſound laſh or two under the belly, or over the contrary ſhoulder, and to any of theſe former corrections you ſhall ever accompany the threatning of your voyce, when the fault is to much foule, and no otherwiſe, becauſe there ſhould be ever an entire love

Corrections in the ring-turnes.

betwixt the horſe and the Horſe-man, which continuall chiding will either take away, or at leaſt root out the apprehenſion thereof.

Cheriſhing in the Ring-turne.

Now for your cheriſhings, they are thoſe which I formerly ſpake of; onely they muſt be uſed at no time but when your horſe doth well, and hath pleaſed your mind, both with his cunning and tractableneſſe: and although the time for the ſame be when he hath finiſh'd his leſſons, yet there is a ſecret pleaſing and cheriſhing of a horſe with the bridle, which muſt be exerciſed in the doing of his leſſons, and that is the ſweetning of his mouth by a little ceaſing of your bridle hand, and gently drawing it up backe againe, letting it come and goe with ſuch an unperceiving motion, that none but the beaſt may know it.

Of ſtopping and going backe.

When your horſe can trot and gallop theſe large rings with all perfectneſſe, which with good induſtry will be perfected in leſſe than a fortnights exerciſe, you ſhall then proceede to make him ſtop faire, comely, and without danger, which you ſhall doe in this manner: Firſt, as ſoone as you have taken his backe, cheriſh him, put him gently forward, and bring him into a ſwift trot; after you have trotted him forty or threeſcore yards forward, you ſhall by drawing in your bridle-hand ſtraitly and ſuddenly, make him gather his hinder legs and fore-legs together, and ſo in an inſtant ſtand ſtill, which aſſoone as he doth, immediately, you ſhall eaſe your hand a little, yet not ſo much as may give him liberty to preſſe forward, but rather to yeeld backeward, which if you finde hee doth, you ſhall give him more liberty, and cheriſh him, and then having paſed a while, draw in your bridle-hand, and make him goe backe two or three paces, at which if hee ſticke, inſtantly eaſe your hand, and draw it up againe, letting it come and goe till hee yeeld

and

and goe backeward, which (for the moſt part) all horſes at the firſt will doe: but if it be that your horſe rebell and will not goe backe with this gentle admonition, you ſhall then cauſe a foot-man ſtanding by to put him backe with his hand, and in his motion you ſhall cheriſh him, that he may underſtand what your will is: and thus every time you make him ſtop, you ſhall make him retire back, till in one ſpace of time you have made both leſſons perfect: and this practice you ſhall uſe both till you come to your large rings, and at every time that you finiſh your leſſon, or give the horſe breath or eaſe; whereby you ſhall perceive that your horſe ſhall learne to trot and gallop the large rings, to ſtop and retire backe all in one ſpace of time, becauſe you ſee ſucceſſively they follow one another, and are to be done (though three) but as one entire leſſon.

Now for the helpes in theſe leſſons, the beſt for ſtopping is the choice of ground, as by making your horſe ever to ſtop down the ſloape of ſome hill, or deſcending ground, whereby he may be compell'd to couch his hinder loines the better, and ſo make him ſtop moſt comely, and to obſerve that the ground be firme and hard, without danger of ſliding, leſt the horſe finding ſuch an imperfection, grow fearefull, and ſo refuſe to doe your will out of his owne danger. In retiring you ſhall helpe him with your rod, by putting it before his breaſt, or ſhaking it before his knees, to make him remove his feete more quicke and nimbly. Helpes.

For corrections in ſtopping, it muſt ſometimes be done by your ſelfe, as with the even ſtroke of your ſpurs, when in his ſtop he diſordereth his head, or with any one ſingle ſpurre, when he caſteth out his hinder loines, and will not ſtop right in an even line; and ſometimes it Corrections.

muſt be done by another by-ſtander, where he refuſeth to ſtop at all, who ſtanding at the place of ſtop, as ſoone as you draw up your hand, ſhall with his rod threaten the horſe, and make him not dare to preſſe forward, or if he doe preſſe forward, to make him retire ſwiftly backe ſo much ground as he gained, both your ſelfe and the by-ſtander, rating him with your voices extremely: for corrections in retiring, they are the even ſtrokes of both your ſpurs, when hee ſtickes or preſſes upon you hand, and will not yeeld backe; and alſo your rod ſtrucke ſharply upon his knees and breaſts, and the rod of a by-ſtander ſtrucke upon his breaſt, knees and face, when his ſtubbornneſſe is too violent.

Cheriſhings. But for his cheriſhings, they be all formerly ſpoke of, when your will is comely and obediently performed, beſides the addition of ſome other, as a preſent eaſing of your bridle hand, and the chapping and cheriſhing of the by-ſtander, and ſo offering him to ſtand and recover breath a good ſpace after.

Of advancing before. When your horſe can ſtop and retire well, which may be done in the ſame ſpace that you teach him his large ring-turnes, for it is as it were three leſſons learn'd in one; you ſhall then teach him to advance before when hee ſtoppeth, which is very comely and gracefull to the beholders; and you ſhall doe it in this manner: After you have ſtopped your horſe, without giving your hand any eaſe, you ſhall lay the calves of both your legges hard to his ſides, and adde thereto the noiſe of the ſhaking of your rod, and your voyce, by crying *up, up*, which will at firſt (peradventure) but a little amaze him, becauſe hee underſtanderh not your meaning: Therefore you ſhall put him forward againe, and doe as before, and that with a little more ſtrength, continuing the practice of the

the ſame till you perceive he taketh one foote from the earth, then cheriſh him a little, and ſo to the leſſons againe, till he taketh up both his legges from the ground, which when he doth orderly or diſorderly, yet cheriſh him exceedingly, that he may come to the knowledge of your meaning without which all your labour is loſt; then to your former practice againe, till you have brought him to that perfectneſſe, that he will with all readineſſe advance as often as you will give him the calves of your legs to his ſides, be it leſſe or more times together: this done, you ſhall looke to the orderly and comelineſſe of his advancing: as firſt, that he takes up his legs both even together, and wind them inwards towards his body; then that he advance not too high (for feare of comming over upon you): but couch his hinder loynes cloſe to the ground; then that he ſprauleth not, nor paweth with his feete forward: and laſtly, that he advance not for his owne pleaſure, but when you command him by your owne direct and orderly motions, for the contrary is a foule fault in Horſemanſhip.

For helps in this leſſon, they are the calves of your legs, the ſhaking of your rod over his head, and your voyce, as is before ſaid, and the deſcent of ſome hanging ground, which will make his hinder loynes couch the better. Helpes.

The Corrections are according to the nature of offences, as the even ſtroake of your Spurs, or a good laſh with your rod, when you ſee hee fixeth his feete to the ground, and ſtubbornely applies himſelfe to diſobey you, or will take up his feete one after another, and not both together. If hee doe advance too high, ſo as he is ready to come over upon you, or if he ſpraule or pawe forth with his feete, you ſhall then not onely give him both your ſpurs hard together, but alſo a good jerke Corrections.

or

or two with your rod betweene his eares: but if he advance when you would not have him, you ſhall then in the ſame inſtant jerke him over both the knees with your rod; and if hee advance againe, jerke him againe, not ceaſing till hee fixe his feete to the ground, or goe backeward; and then cheriſh him.

Cheriſhings. For particular cheriſhings in this Leſſon, they are no other than thoſe former ſpoke of, onely they muſt be done with a more ready watchfulneſſe, in the very inſtant and moment of time, in which he performeth any thing well, that the Horſe may underſtand why, and wherefore he receiveth ſuch contentment, and thereby be incouraged to continue in his goodneſſe, and be more ready to apprehend his Riders pleaſure.

The uſe of advancing. For the uſe of advancing, it is two-fold: as namely, to give a grace to his other leſſons, and to bring his body to nimbleneſſe: yet for the moſt part, it is onely uſed at the ſtop; where when you have finiſh'd any leſſon, if then concluding with the ſtop, you make him advance, once, twice, or thrice, it will be both a grace to the Beaſt, and ſhew much art in the Horſe-man; alſo it maketh a horſe apt and ready to turne well, and maketh him truſt to his hinder legges, whereby his fore-parts may be directed and governed at the Horſe-mans pleaſure.

Of yerking behinde. Next to advancing, you ſhall teach your Horſe to yerke behinde, in this manner: When at any time you have made him ſtop, you ſhall preſently with your rod give him a good jerke under the belly neere to his flanke, which though at the firſt hee apprehend not, yet by a continuall and conſtant uſe thereof, you ſhall in the end bring him to yerke out his hinder legs; at the firſt doing whereof, you ſhall cheriſh him, for that is the onely language by which he knowes he doth your will; and then having

having paused a little, make him doe it againe, increasing it every day, and doubling his doings, till he be so ready, that when you please to give the jerke, he will then give the yerke, and then you shall looke to the comelineſſe of his doings, that is to say, that he yerke not out his hinder legs, till his fore-legs be above the ground, then that he yerke not one leg further out than the other, but both even together, then that hee yerke not too high, and lastly, that he yerke not one legge out whileſt the other is on the ground, all which are errors of great grosneſſe. Therefore, to make the horſe more perfect in this leſſon, it shall be good to teach him to yerke out behinde, when hee ſtandeth in the ſtable, by jerking him upon the buttockes with your rod, and not ceasing to moleſt him till he raiſe his rumpe above the ground, and then to cheriſh him, and ſo to apply him without any eaſe and reſt, till he doe your will; then when he is perfect to put the ſame in practice when you are in the field on his backe, by turning your rod in your hand to his buttocke-ward, and touching him therewith, to make him yerke as aforeſaid.

For the helpes, they are the conſtant ſtaying his mouth on the bridle, the ſtroake of your rod under his belly, or the gentle touching him upon the rumpe with the ſame. Helpes.

The corrections are onely the even ſtroake of your Spurs, when either he refuſeth to yerke, or yerketh out diſorderly, and out of malice; or the ſingle Spur on that ſide on which he yerketh out moſt diſorderly: and laſtly, a reſtleſſe holding of him to the leſſon, not giving him any reſt or eaſe, till he doe it in that manner which you can wiſh. Corrections.

Then for his cheriſhings, they are all thoſe formerly mentioned, Cheriſhings.

mentioned, being beſtowed upon him in the very inſtant of his well-doing.

Of turning. When your horſe is perfect in all the leſſons formerly ſpoke of, and underſtandeth the helpes and corrections belonging to the ſame, you ſhall then teach him to turne readily on both hands, by ſtraitning his large rings, and bringing them into a much leſſe compaſſe: and although amongſt Horſe-men, and in the Art of Horſeman-ſhip, there are divers and ſundry turnes, ſome high and lofty, as the turne upon the *corvet*, *Capriole*, or on bounds, ſome cloſe and neere the ground, as the tune *Terra, Terra*, or theſe we call *Caragolo*, *Serpeigiare*, and ſuch like, and ſome ſwift and flying, as the *Incavellare*, *Chambetta*, and ſuch like: yet ſith they all labour but to one end, which is to bring an horſe to an exact ſwiftneſſe and readineſſe in turning, I will in as briefe and plaine manner as I can, ſhew you how to compaſſe the ſame. Firſt, therefore you ſhall make out a ring ſome three or foure yards in compaſſe, and in the ſame with al gentleneſſe a while walke your horſe, ſuffering him to goe the ſame at his owne pleaſure, gathering his head up by little and little, and making him take pleaſure in the ſame, till you finde that he taketh knowledge of the Ring, and will with all willingneſſe make about the ſame, coveting rather to ſtraiten it, than enlarge it, which perceived, you ſhall then carry your bridle-hand conſtant and ſomewhat ſtrait, yet the outmoſt reyne ever ſomewhat more ſtrait than the inmoſt, making the horſe rather look from the ring than into the ring, and the calve of your leg (as occaſion ſhall ſerve) ſomewhat neere to the outward ſide of the horſe, and then you ſhal trot him about the ring, firſt on the one ſide and then on the other, making your changes within that ſtrait ring, as you did before within the large ring.

And

And in this ſort without ceaſing, you ſhall exercise your Horſe a full houre together, then ſtop him, make him advance twice or thrice together, then retire in an even line, and ſo ſtand ſtill a pretty while, and cheriſh him, then when hee hath taken freſh breath, to him againe, and doe as before, continually labouring by raiſing up your bridle-hand, and thurſting forward your legs and body, to bring his trot to all the ſwiftneſſe and loftineſſe that may be, and in your changes to do them ſo readily and roundly as may be, alſo making him to lap his outmoſt leg ſo much over his inmoſt leg, that he may cover it more than a foot over, and thus you ſhall exerciſe him a whole forenoone, at leaſt a weeke together, only doing his former leſſons but once over in a morning, and no more, and in this practice you teach him perfectly three leſſons together, that is, the turne *Terra*, *Terra*, the *Incavalare*, and the *Chamberta*, the turne *Terra*, *Terra*, in the outmoſt circle of the ſtrait Ring, and the *Incavalare* and *Chamberta* in the changes, wherein he is forc't to lap one legge over another, or elſe to lift up the inmoſt leg from the ground whileſt he brings the outmoſt over it: and ſurely in this Ring, and theſe changes, conſiſteth all the maine Art of turning, and the chiefeſt glory both of the horſe and the Horſe-man: and therefore it is meet for every Rider to thinke this leſſon never perfectly learnd, and therefore continually to practiſe his horſe in the ſame, making him not onely tread and trot theſe narrow rings, but alſo gallop them, and from galloping them, to paſſe them about in ground falts, as by taking up his fore-legs from the ground both together, and bringing his hinder feete in their place, and ſo paſſing the Ring about once, twice, or thrice, at your pleaſure, or as oft as the horſes ſtrength and courage will allow: and this is the

true

true turne called *Terra, Terra*, and of greateſt requeſt with horſe-men, and likewiſe with ſouldiers; and this will every horſe naturally and eaſily be brought unto, onely by a continuall trotting and gallopping of theſe narrow rings. Thus you ſee the perfectneſſe of your large rings brings your horſe to an eaſie uſe of the ſtrait rings, and the eaſie knowledge of the ſtrait rings brings a horſe to the perfection of turning, which is the ground and maine ſumme of this Art, as ſtopping begets retiring, and retiring advancing. Thus every leſſon as it were a chaine is lincket one to another.

Helpes. The helpes belonging to turning, are all whatſoever are formerly ſpoken of, becauſe it is a leſſon which beſides that it containeth in it ſelfe all other leſſons, ſo it muſt be done with more courage, Art, and nimbleneſſe, than any elſe whatſoever, and therefore the horſe had neede of all the aſſiſtance that can poſſibly be given him.

Corrections. The corrections are the ſpurres given to the outmoſt ſide, when the horſe ſtickes, and is harder to come about on the one ſide, than on the other; and the rod ſtricken hard on the outmoſt ſide of the offending members, as alſo a continuall labour when the horſe ſhewes either unwillingneſſe or diſobedience: touching the unnimbleneſſe of his turning when hee beares one legge againſt another, or treads one foot upon another, the raps and hurts he doth himſelfe are ſufficient corruptions, and will both make him know his fault and amend it.

Cheriſhings. For his cheriſhings, they are alſo the former already ſpoken of, yet to be uſed (if poſſible) with greater earneſtneſſe, in as much as this leſſon being moſt cunning, would for the performance thereof ever receive the moſt comfort.

Your horſe being brought to this perfection, that hee will

will perfectly tread his large rings, ſtop, retire, advance before, yerke behinde, and turne readily on either hand, you ſhall then take away his muſrole and trench, and in ſtead thereof put upon his head a gentle Cavezan of two joynts and three pieces, with a chap-band underneath, which you ſhall buckle cloſe, but not ſtrait, and be ſure that the Cavezan lie upon the tender griſſell of the horſes noſe, ſomewhat neere to the upper part of his noſtrills, then to the chap-band you ſhall faſten the Martingale, and laſtly, to the rings on each ſide the cavezan, you ſhall faſten long divided reynes, more than a yard and a halfe in length a piece, then into his mouth you ſhall put a ſweet ſmooth cannon bit, with a plaine watering chaine, the cheeke being of large ſize, ſo as it may arme a little above the point of his ſhoulder; and the kirble ſhall be thicke, round and large, hanging looſely upon his nether lip, and entiſing the horſe with his lip to play with the ſame. Thus armed, you ſhall take his backe, and caſting the left reyne of your cavezan over the horſes right ſhoulder, you ſhall beare it under your thumbe, with the reynes of the bit in your left hand; and the right reynes of the cavezan you ſhal caſt over the horſes left ſhoulder, and beare it with your rod in your right hand, and ſo trot him forth the firſt morning out-right a mile or two in the high way, making him onely feele and grow acquainted with the bit, and onely making him now and then ſtop and retire, and gathering up his head into a due place, and faſhioning his reyne with all the beauty and comelineſſe that may be, which done, the next day you ſhall bring him to his large rings, and as was before ſhewed, there make him perfect with the bit, as you did with the ſnaffle, firſt in trotting, then in gallopping of the ſame, then make him ſtop, retire, advance, yerke behind,

and

and turne upon either hand, with a great deale more perfectneſſe, and more grace than was formerly done with the trench, which is an eaſie labour, in as much as the bit is of much better command, and brings more comelineſſe to the horſes motions, is alſo a greater help, a ſharper correction, and a cheriſher of more comfort than any before uſed. And thus in the firſt moneth you may make any horſe perfect upon the trene in the leſſons before ſpoken of, ſo in the ſecond month you may make the ſame leſſons a great deale more perfect upon the bit, and ſo preſume in two moneths to have a perfect ground horſe, fit either for Souldier or Scholer, that hath any good rules of Horſeman-ſhip in him.

Of turning Poſt.

Now for as much as the Art of turning in horſes is of great difficulty, and ought of all leſſons to be moſt elaborate, I will ſpeake a little further thereof, and ſhew you the practice of theſe preſent times, for the beſt accompliſhment of the ſame, without ſtirring up evill motions in the Horſe, whence Reſtiveneſſe and other vile errours doe grow; for it is certaine that every horſe naturally deſireth neither offence, nor to offend, but the raſh diſcretion of ignorant Horſe-men which will compell a horſe to doe, before he know what, or how to doe, is the begetting of thoſe evills which are hardly or never reclaimed: for a horſe is like an ill brought up boy, who having learnt drunkenneſſe in his youth, will hardly be ſober in his age, and having once got a knaviſh quality, though hee be never ſo much puniſhed for the ſame, will yet now and then ſhew that the remembrance is not utterly extinguiſhed: and for as much as in this leſſon of ſtrait turnes, there is ſo much curious hardneſſe, that a horſe is moſt ſubject to rebell, and learne many evills thereby, therefore to prevent all thoſe evills, you

ſhall

shall cause a smooth strong post to be well rammed & fixed in the earth in the midst of the strait ring, at the very point and center thereof; then causing a foot-man to stand at the post, you shall give him the right Reine of your cavezan, which you shall make him hold about the post; and so walke or trot your horse about the same, on your right hand as long as you please, then taking up the right Reine, give him the left Reine, and do as much upon the left hand, and thus change from hand to hand, as oft as you shall think convenient, till you have brought your horse to the absolute perfection of every turne, the post being such a guide and bond unto the Horse, that albeit the horse-men were of himselfe utterly ignorant, yet it is impossible the horse should either disorder or disobey his Riders purpose.

When your Horse can thus perfectly set every severall turne, either straight or open with his bit, you shall then teach him to manage, which is the only posture for the use of the sword on horse-backe, and you shall doe it in this manner: First, cause some by-stander to pricke up in the earth two riding Rods, about twenty or forty yards or more, as you thinke good, distant one from the other; then walke your horse in a straight turne or Ring about, the first on your right hand, and so passing him in an even furrow downe to the other Rod, walke about it also in a narrow Ring on your left hand, then thrust him into a gentle gallop downe the even furrow, till you come to the first Rod, and there making him, as it were, stop & advance without any pause or intermission of time, thrust him forward againe, and beate the carte *Terre*, *Terre*, about it on your right hand, then gallop forth right to the other Rod, and in the same manner beate the turne about on your left hand: and thus doe as

Of managing.

oft as you ſhall think it convenient for your owne practice and the horſes ſtrength.

Diverſities of manages.

Now of theſe manages our ancient maſters in horſmanſhip have made divers kinds, as manage with reſt, and manage without reſt: manage with ſingle turnes, and manage with double turnes; which indeed doth rather breed confuſion, than underſtanding in eyther the horſe or horſ-man: therfore for your better knowledge I will reduce them onely but to two kinds: that is manage open, and manage cloſe: your open manage is that which I ſhewed you before, when you turne *Terra à Terra*, which is the moſt open of all ſtrait turns: and your cloſe manage is when you turne upon the *circulars*, or *chamietta*, which are the cloſeſt of all turns, & may be done as before I ſhewed, in a flying manner, even upon one foot, which although it be artfull, yet it is not ſo glorious and ſafe for the Souldiers practiſe, onely this you may be moſt aſſured of, that when a horſe can manage upon both theſe turnes, he may manage without more inſtruction, upon any other turne whatſoever.

Of the carere

When your horſe is perfect in the manages before ſaid, you may then paſſe a *carere* at your pleaſure, which is to run your horſe forth right at his full ſpeed, & then making him ſtop quickely, ſuddenly firme, & cloſe on his buttock: in which leſſon there needeth little inſtruction, but only ſome few obſervations as firſt, that you make not your *carere* ſo long, whereby the horſe may be weakned, nor too ſhort, whereby his true wind and courage may be undiſcovered, but competent and indifferent as about 4 or 5 ſcore yards at the moſt: then that you ſtart him gently without affright: and laſtly, that you firſt give him a little warning with your bridle hand, and then ſtop him firmely and ſtrongly: which

place of ſtop, if it be a little bending downward, it is a great deale the better. And thus in theſe leſſons already ſhewed you, conſiſteth all the full perfection of a horſe for ſervice in the warres, which any painefull man may bring his horſe well unto in leſſe then three moneths, how ever our ancients in former times have been blinded, and in the ſame practiſe, have waſted two yeeres ere they brought it to perfection.

Horſes for pleaſure.

Now foraſmuch as to the Art of riding belongeth divers other ſalts and leaps, right pleaſant and curious to behold, and though not generally uſed in the warres, yet not utterly uſeleſſe for the ſame, and lik'wiſe they are many times very needfull for the health of mans body, I will by no meanes abridge our Engliſh husbandman of the ſame, but proceed to the leſſons which are meet for horſes of pleaſure; of which the firſt is to make a horſe bound aloft with all his foure feete from the ground; and you ſhall doe it in this manner: when you have trotted your horſe forth-right a dozen or twenty yards, you ſhall ſtop him, and when he hath advanced once or twice, you ſhall a litle ſtraiten your bridle-hand, and then give him the even ſtroke of both your ſpurs together hard, which at firſt will but onely quicken and amaze him, but doing it againe and againe, it will breed other thoughts in him, and he being of ſpirit and mettall (as it is loſt labour to offer to teach a jade ſuch motions) hee will preſently gather up his body, and either riſe little or much from the ground, then preſently cheriſh him, and after ſome reſt, offer him the like againe, and thus doe till you have made him bound twice or thrice: then make much of him, and doe no more for that day: the next day renue his Leſſon againe, and double his exerciſe, increaſing ſo day by day, till hee come to that perfection

Of bounding aloft.

that he will bound whensoever your spurs shall command him.

Of the Corvet. When your horse can bound perfectly, then you shall teach him the corvet, it this manner: you shall at the corner where two walls joyne together, a little hollow the ground a Horses length or more, and then place a smooth strong post by the side of the hollowneſſe a horses length likewise from the wall, then over against the post fasten an yron Ring in the wall; this done, ride your horse into the hollow place, and fasten one of the reines of the cavezan into the Ring, & the other about the post, then after you have cherisht your horse, make him advance, by the helpe of the calves of your legges onely twice or thrice together, then let him stand still, and cherish him, then make him to advance againe at least a dozen times together, then rest, and after advance twenty or forty times together, dailyincreasing his advancings, as he growes perfect therein, till you perceive that he hath got such a habit therein that he will by no meanes presse forward, but keeping his ground certaine, advance both before and behind of an equall height, and keepe one just and certaine time with the motion of your legs, neither doing slower nor faster, but all after one manner and leisure: but if you find that he doth not raise his hinder parts high enough, then you shall cause a foote-man to stand by you, and as you make him advance before, so the foote-man by jerking him gently upon the hinder fillets with his rod, to raise up his hinder parts: also this will bring your horse in few daies to a perfect and brave corvet, so that after you may doe it in any place where you please, without the helpe either of your wall or post, or other by-stander.

Of the gallop Gallade. When your Horse is made perfect in the corvet, and

that he will doe it readily and comely, you shall at the end of every third or fourth advancing, give him the stroke of your spurs, and make him bound aloft, then put him to his corvet againe as before, and then make him bound againe, and thus at the end of every third advancing see you make him bound for the length of a tile bar, or an ordinary managing furrow, according to the horses strength: and this is called the *gallop gallyard*, which if it be caught a horse along by the side of some wall of smooth pale, it is so much the better, and a great deale fewer disorders will arise and trouble the Rider.

The next lesson you shall teach your horse after the gallop gallyard, is the *capriole* or Goates leape, which is the same manner of motion with the corvet, only it is to be done forward, for much ground gained in the fall, & the horse is to raise his hinder-parts as high or rather higher then his fore-parts, and to keepe rather a swifter then slower time in doing of it, therefore when you teach your horse to doe it, you shall bring him into some hollow furrow, where the ground is a little descending, & turning his head to the descent, put him into the corvet temperate and gently; then when you give him the calves of your legges to raise vp his fore-parts, in the same instant strike your legs violently forward againe, that he may not sticke, but carry his hinder legges after his fore-legges, and let some skilfull foote-man standing by your side jerk the horse over the fillets with his Rod, & make him raise vp his hinder-parts: and thus do without ceasing, til hee performe your will nimbly and cunningly, and then forget not to cherish him & give him all comfort possible. And this lesson & the other which consist of violent and quicke falls or leapes, would ever be practised the first in the morning whilest a horse is fresh & lusty,

Of the Capriolle.

lusty, for to put him to them after his fire edge is taken away, will but bring him to a loathing of his instruction, or at the best to doe them but slovenly, heavily, and vnwillingly.

Of going side. There is also another motion which is pleasing to the eye, though it bee very labourſome to the body, which is to make a horse goe side-long of which hand soever the rider is disposed, and is very necessary in the wars, because it is the avoyding of any blow comming from the enemy. This motion when you intend to teach your Horse, you shall draw vp your bridle-hand somewhat strait, and if you determine to have him goe aside to your right hand, lay your left reine close to his necke, and the calve of your left legge close to his side, and as you did in the *Traverſes*, make him lap or put his left legge over his right, then turning your rod backeward, and ierking him gently on the left hinder thigh, make him bring his hinder parts to the right side also, and stand in an even line, as at the first, then make him remoove his fore-parts more then before, so that he may stand as it were crosse over the even line, and then make him bring his hinder parts after, and stand in an even line againe: and thus doe till by long practise hee will move his fore-parts and hinder parts both together, and goe side-long as far as you please, then cherish him: And if you will have him goe towards your left hand, doe as you did before, vsing all your *helpes* and *correctives* on the right side onely. And thus much I thinke is sufficient to have spoke touching all the severall lessons meet to be taught to any horse whatsoever, whether he be for service or for pleasure, and which being performed artfully, carefully, and with patience, you may presume your horse is compleat and perfect, the rather sith

no

no man can find out any invention, or teach any other motions to a horſe, which may be good and comely, but you ſhall eaſily perceive, that they are Received from ſome one of theſe already Rehearſed.

Now if you ſhal be called to Ride before a *Prince*, you must not obſerue the liberty of your owne will, but the ſtate of the *perſon* before whom you Rid, and the grace of the horſe which you Ride: and therefore being come into the Riding place, you ſhall chuſe your ground, ſo that the *perſon* before whom you are to Ride may ſtand in the midſt thereof, ſo as he may wel behold both the paſſage of the horſe to him and from him; then being ſeated in a comely *order*, and every ornament about you handſome and decent, you ſhall put your horſe gently forth into a comely trot, and being come againſt the *perſon* of eſtate, bow your body downe to the *creſt* of your horſe, then raiſing your ſelfe againe, paſſe halfe a ſcore yards beyond him, and there marking out a *narrow ring*, thruſt your horſe into a gentle gallop, and give him two or three managing turnes in as ſhort ground as may be, to ſhew his nimbleneſſe and Readineſſe: then vpon the laſt turne, his face being towards the *great perſon*, ſtop him comely and cloſe, and make him to advance twice or thrice; then having taken breath, put him into a *gallop galliard*, and ſo paſſe along the length of the even *furrow* with that ſalt, making him do it alſo round about the *ring*: then his face being towards the prince, ſtop him and give him freſh breath, then thruſt him into the *Capriole*, now and then making him yerke out behind, yet ſo as it may be perceived it is your will, and not the horſes malice: and having gone about the ring with that ſalt, and his face brought to looke vpon the *Prince*, ſtop him againe and give him breath: Then drawing neerer

Riding before a Prince

Of the Carragolo.

to the Prince, you ſhall beat the turne *Terra, Terra*, firſt in a pretty large compaſſe, then by ſmall degrees ſtraitning it a little and a little, draw it to the very center where you may give two or three cloſe flying turnes, and then changing your hands, undoe all that you did before, til you come to the Ring: firſt largone ſe; then the horſes face being direct upon the Prince, ſtop him, and put him into a corner, and in that motion hold him a pretty ſpace, making him doe it firſt in an even line, firſt to the right hand, then to the left, now backward, then forward againe: and thus having performed every motion orderly and comely, bow downe your body to the Prince, and ſo depart.

To ride for Recreation.

But if you intend to Ride onely for Recreation, then you ſhall marke what leſſon your horſe is moſt imperfect in, and with that leſſon you ſhal ever when you ride both beginne and end, after it you ſhal fal to thoſe Leſſons which are to your ſelfe moſt difficult, and by the practice of them bring your ſelfe to a perfectneſſe, then conſequently to all other Leſſons, repeating (as it were) every one over more or leſſe, leſt want of uſe breed forgetfulneſſe, and forgetfulneſſe utter ignorance: but if your recreation in riding be tied to any ſpecial rules of health, and that your practice therein proceede more from the commandement of your Phyſician then your pleaſure, then I would wiſh you in the morning firſt to begin with a ſtirring or rough leſſon, as the *gallop gallyard*, *bounding*, or ſuch like, which having a little ſtirred your blood, and made it warme, you ſhall then calme it againe with a gentle manage, or the galloping of large Rings: then to ſtirre your ſpirits againe, to bring the ſtone downe, or procure appetite, paſſe into the *capriole* or *corvet*, and then to make quiet thoſe moved parts,

ſet

set the turne called *Terre, Terra*, the *incaualare*, and such like. And thus one while stirring your blood, & another while moderately allaying such stirring, you shall give your body that due & proper exercise which is most fit for health and long life. Many other wayes this Recreation may be vsed for the good of a mans body, which because particular infirmities must give particular rules how and when to vse it, I wil at this time speake no further thereof, but refer the exercise to their owne pleasures which shal practice the same, and to the good they shall finde in the practice.

Chap. 3.

Of the breeding of all sorts of Horses fit for the Husbandmans vse.

THe mindes of men being swaied with many various motions take delight sometimes to be recreated rather with contemplative delights, then with active pleasures, and there is strong Reason therefore, because disability of body, or affaires of the Kingdome or Common-wealth, may take a man from those pre-occupations, which otherwise might stir him to more laborious exercise: and of these contemplative Recreations, I can prefer none before that Gentlemanly and beneficial delight of breeding creatures meet for the vse of man, and the good of the common-wealth wherin he liveth, and of these breedings I cannot esteeme any so excellent, as the breeding of Horses, both for the pleasure we gaine thereby in our owne particular service, and also for the strength, defence, and tillage of the kingdome.

The breeding of Horses.

He therfore that suteth his recreation to the breeding of horses, must first have respect unto the ground whereon he liveth or enioyeth; for every ground is not meet

to

to breed on, but ſome too good, ſome too bad: ſome too good, becauſe they may be exhauſted to a more beneficial commodity, horſes having a world of caſualties attending on them, and many yeares before the true profit doth ariſe; and ſome too bad, becauſe the extreame barrenneſſe of the ſame will deny competent nouriſhment to the thing bred, and ſo to the loſſe of time and profit adde mortality.

Grounds to breed on.

The ground, then meete to breede horſes on, would neyther be extreame fruitfull, nor extreame barren, but of an indifferent mixture, yeelding rather a ſhort ſweete burthen, then a long, rich and fruitfull; it would rather lie high then low, but howſoever firme and hard vnder the foote; it would be full of Mole-hils, vneven treadings, hils, and much craggineſſe, to bring colts to nimbleneſſe of foote; it would have good ſtore of freſh waters, an open ſharpe ayre, and ſome convenient covert; and this ground is beſt if it be ſeverall and incloſed, yet may be bred vpon though it be open and in common, onely ſome more carefulneſſe to bee looked for, a little before, and in the time of Foaling. Nay, the grounds which are neyther ſeverall nor common, are very good alſo to breed on, and thoſe be your teathering grounds, which we call particular grounds; for though they bee proper commonly to one man, yet they are not divided nor eaten otherwiſe then at the owners pleaſure: And theſe teathering grounds are as good as any grounds for the firſt nouriſhing of a foale, if they be amongſt corne grounds, or any graine except peaſe onely.

Diviſion of grounds

If you have much ground to breed on, you ſhall divide it into many paſtures, the leaſt and barrenneſt for your Stallion to Run with your Mares in, thoſe which have leaſt danger of waters are for your mares to foale in the

the fruitfulleſt & of beſt growth for your mares to give milk in, and the moſt ſpacious and vnevenneſt to bring vp your Colts in after they are weaned.

For the choyce of a good Stallion, and which is beſt for our Kingdome, opinion ſwayeth ſo far, that a man can hardly give well-received Directions: yet ſurely if men will be ruled by the truth of experience, the beſt Stallion to beget horſes for the warres is the *Courſer*, the *Iennet* or the *Turkes*; the beſt for courſing and running is the *Barbary*; the beſt for hunting is the *Baſtard courſer*, begot of the *Engliſh*; the beſt for the Coach is the *Flemmiſh*, the beſt for travaile or burthen is the *Engliſh*, and the beſt for eaſe is the *Iriſh-hobby*. Choice of ſtallion, and which are beſt.

For the choyce of *Mares* you ſhal greatly reſpect their ſhapes and mettals, eſpecially that they be beautifully fore-handed, for they give much goodneſſe to their Foales: and for their kinds, any of the *Races* before ſpoken of is very good, or any of them mixt with our true Engliſh *Races*, as *Baſtard-courſer Mare*, *Baſtard-Iennet*, *Baſtard-Turke*, *Barbary*, *&c.* Choyce of Mares.

The beſt time to put your Stallion & Mares together, is in the middle of *March*, if you have any Graſſe, as you ſhould have great care for that purpoſe, and one foale falling in *March*, is worth two falling in *May*, becauſe he poſſeſſeth, as it were, two winters in a yeare, and is therby ſo hardned, that nothing can (almoſt) after impaire him, and the beſt time to take your horſe from the Mares againe, is at the end of *April* or middle of *May*, in which you ſhal note, that from the middle of *March*, till the midſt of *May*, you may at any time put your ſtallions to your Mares, and a months continuance is ever ſufficient: provided ever, as neere as you can, that you put them together in the increaſe of the Moone, for Foales When to put them together.

got

got in the wane are not accounted strong or healthfull.

Of covering Mares.

For covering of Mares, it is to be done two waies, out of hand, or in hand; out of hand, as when the Horse and Mares run together abroad, as is before said, or turned loose into some empty barne for three nights, one after another, which is the surest and the safest way for a Mares holding; or in hand, early in a morning, & late at an evening two or three daies together, when you bring the Horse to the Mare, and make him cover her once or twice at a time, holding him fast in your hand, and when the act is done, lead him backe to the stable, and in this act you shall ever observe, as soone as the Horse commeth from her back, presently to cast a pale of cold water on her hinder parts; or else to chase her swiftly up and downe, for feare by standing still she cast out the seed, which is very ordinary.

To know if a Mare holds.

To know whether your Mare hold to the horse or no there be diverse wayes, of which the best is by offering her the Horse againe at the next increase of the Moone, which if she willingly receive, it is a signe she held not before; but if she refuse, then it is most certaine she is sped: or if you poure a spoonefull of cold vinegar into her eare, if she shake onely her head, it is a signe shee holds, but if she shake head, body and all, then truly it is a signe that she doth not hold: Lastly, if after she is covered you see her scoure, her coat grow smooth and shining, and that she doth (as it were) renue and increase in liking, then it is a signe she holds; but if she hold at a stay without any amendment, then offer the Horse againe, for she is not served.

To conceive Male-foales.

To make your Mares conceive most male foales, you shall be sure to keepe your Stallion proud, and your Mare poore, that his lust mastering hers, he may onely

be

be predominant and chiefe in the action: many other rules fancie deviseth, but they erre in their ends, and I would by no meanes have this discourse capable of any uncertainety.

If you have any advantage given you by friendship, or otherwise, wherby you may have a Mare at the present very well covered, only yours is not yet ready for the horse, you shall in this case to provoke lust in her, give her to drinke good store of clarified honey and new milke mixt together, and then with a bush of nettles all to nettle her privy parts, and then immediately offer her the horse. To provoke lust.

To keepe your Mares from barrennesse, and to make them ever apt to conceive foales, you shall by no meanes feed them too extreame fat, but keep them in a middle state of body, by moderate labour, for the leaner they are when they come to take horse, the much better they will conceive. To keepe Mares from barrennesse.

After your Mares have beene covered, and that you perceive in them the markes of conceiving, you shall let them rest three weekes or a moneth, that the substance may knit; then after moderately labour or travell them, till you see them spring, and then turne them abroad, and let them runne till they foale; for to house them after is dangerous and unwholesome. Ordering Mares after couering.

If your Mare be hard of foaling, or will not cleanse after she hath foaled, you shall take a pint of running water, wherein good store of Fennell hath beene boyled, and as much strong, old, sweet wine, with a fourth part of the best Sallet-oyle, and having mixt them well together, being but luke-warme, poure it into her nostrils, and then hold and stop them close, that she may straine her whole body, and it will presently give her ease. A helpe for Mares after foaling.

As

Ordering Mares after foaling

As ſoone as your Mare hath fol'd, you ſhall remove her into the beſt graſſe you have, which is freſh and unſoiled, to make her milke ſpring; & if it be early in the yeere, you ſhall have care that there be good ſhelter in the ſame, and there let her nourish her foale moſt part of the ſummer following.

Weaning of foales.

As touching the weaning of foales, though ſome uſe to weane them at *Michaelmas*, or *Martilmas* following; out of a ſuppoſition that the winter milke is not good or wholeſome, yet they are much deceived; and if you can by any convenient meanes (ſaving greater loſſes) let your foales run with their Dams the whole yeere, even till they foale againe; for it will keepe the foale better in health, in more luſt, and leſſe ſubject to tenderneſſe.

Ordering after the weaning.

When you intend to weane your foales, you ſhall take them from their Dams over-night, & drive them into ſome empty houſe, where they may reſt, and the Mares be free from their noyſes: then on the morning following give to every foale faſting a branch or two of *Saven* annointed or rold in butter, & then having faſted two houres after, give him a little meate, as graſſe, hay, or garbadge of Corne, with ſome cleare water, & do thus three daies together; then ſeeing that they have forgotten their Dams, geld ſuch colt-foales as you intend to make geldings of; and after their ſwellings are paſt, put them with your other colt-foales into a *paſture* provided for them by themſelves, and your fille-foales into another by themſelves: which *paſtures* may either be high Woods, Commons, or ſuch like ſpacious peeces of ground, where they may run till they bee ready for the Saddle.

Gelding of Colts.

Now, albeit I proportion unto you this manner of gelding of Foales, yet I would have you know that the

beſt

beſt and ſafeſt way to geld them is, if it may be, under the Damme which they ſucke, as at nine or at fifteene daies of age, if the ſtones appeare; or elſe ſo ſoone as you can by any meanes perceive them fall downe into the cod, for then there will be no danger of ſwelling, or other miſchiefes, which commonly attend the action. And thus much touching the breeding of horſes, and the obſervations due to the ſame, through all the courſes and paſſages thereof, as hath beene found by ancient practiſe and experience, as appeares in my Maſterpiece.

CHAP. 4.

Of horſes for travell, and how to make them amble.

THe Husbandman, whoſe occupation is the generall affaires of the Common-wealth, as ſome to the markets, ſome to the City, & ſome to the Seates of Juſtice, muſt neceſſarily be imployed almoſt in continuall travell, and therefore it is meet that he be provided ever of a good and eaſie travelling horſe.

The markes of a good travelling-horſe.

The markes whereby he ſhall chooſe a good travelling horſe, are theſe: hee ſhall be of good colour and ſhape, cleane headed, and round foreheaded, a full eye, open noſtrill, wide jawed, looſe thropled, deep necked, thinne creſted, broad breaſt, flat chin'd, out rib'd, cleane limb'd, ſhort joynted, ſtrong hooved, well metald, neither fiery, nor craving, ſtrong in every member, and eaſie to mount and get up upon; he ſhall follow without haling, and ſtand ſtill when hee is reſtrained.

To make a horſe amble.

Now forаſmuch as there are a world of good horſes, which are not eaſie, and a world of eaſie horſes which are not good, you ſhall by theſe directions following make any horſe amble whatſoever: firſt then you ſhal underſtand that practiſe hath made divers men believe

that

Diuers waies of ambling.

that diuerſe waies they can make a horſe amble, as by gagging them in the mouthes, by toyling them in deep earth, by the helpe of ſhooes, by galloping & tyring, or ſuch like, all which are ill & imperfect: yet the truth is, there is but one certaine and true way to compaſſe it, and that is to make a ſtrong garth webbe, flat and well quilted with cotten, foure paſternes for the ſmals of his fore-legs, vnder his knees, and for the ſmals of his hinder legs ſomewhat below the ſpavin-joynts: to theſe paſternes you ſhall fixe ſtrong ſtraps of leather, with good yron buckles, to make ſhorter or longer at pleaſure; and having plac't them about his foure legs, you ſhall take two ſeuerall round ropes, of an eaſie twiſt, made with ſtrong loopes at either end, and not aboue eight handfuls in length; and theſe the horſe ſtanding in a true proportion, you ſhall faſten to the 4. ſtraps of leather; to wit, one of them to his neere fore-leg and his neere hinder-leg, and the other to his farre fore-leg and his farre hinder-legge, which is cald amongſt Horſe-men trammeling: with theſe you ſhall let him walke in ſome incloſed piece of ground, till he can ſo perfectly goe in the ſame, that when at any time you offer to chaſe him, you may ſee him amble truely and ſwiftly; then you ſhall take his backe, and ride him with the ſame trammels, at leaſt three or foure times a day, till you finde that he is ſo perfect, that no way can be ſo rough and vneuen as to compell him to alter his ſtroke or go vnpimbly. This done, you may firſt take away one trammell, then after the other, and only wreath about vnder his foure fet-locks thick and heavie great roles of hay, or ſtraw-ropes, and ſo ride him with the ſame a good ſpace after, for it will make him amble eaſie; then cut them away, and ride and exerciſe him without any thing but the ordinary

Of trammeling.

Of wiſping.

helpe

helpe of the bridles, and there is no doubt but hee will keepe his pace, to your full contentment and pleasure.

Now during this time of your teaching, if your horse strike not a large stroke and over-reach enough, then you shall make the trammell the straiter, but if he over-reach too much, then you shall give it more liberty: and herein you shall finde that an inch straitning, or an inch inlarging, will adde or abate at least halfe a foote, an whole foote and direct stroke. And thus much touching the teaching of any horse to amble, of what nature or quality soever he be, or how unapt or untoward soever to learne.

Chap. V.

Of the ordering and dieting of the hunting horse.

SOme love hunting for the exercise of their owne bodies, some for the chase they hunt, some for the running of the hounds, and some for the training of their horses, whereby they may finde the excellency of their goodnesse and indurance: to him therefore which placeth his delight in the goodnesse of his horse, I would wish him thus to order and diet him, and hee shall most assuredly come to the true knowledge of the best worth which is within him; and if in these rules which I now shew, I be lesse curious then formerly I have beene, let no man wonder thereat, but know that *Time* (which is the mother of experience) doth in our labours shew us more new and more neerer wayes to our ends, then at the first we conceived: And though when I first practised this Art, I knew not how to bring a very fat horse from *Michaelmas* till *Christmas* to shew his utmost perfection, I I know now in two moneths (though never so foule)

how to make him fit for any wager, daring now boldly to adventure on that, with which before I thought almost present death to offer: thus doth observation and labour finde out the darkest secrets in Art.

Taking up of the hunting Horse.

To beginne then with the first ordering of a hunting horse, you shall know that the best time to take him from grasse is about *Bartholomew-tide*, the day being faire, dry and pleasant; and as soone as hee is taken up, to let him stand all that night in any vast house, to empty his body; the next day stable him, and give him wheat straw if you please, but no longer in any wise; for though the old Rule is to take up horses bellies with straw, yet it straitneth the guts, heats the liver, and hurteth the wind: therfore let onely moderate exercise, as riding him forth to water morning and evening, and other airings, doe what you expect straw should: and for his foode let it bee hay that is sweet though rough, and eyther old, or at least well sweat in the Mowe.

Cloathing the Horse.

After his belly is emptyed, you shall cloath him first with a single cloath, whilest the heate endureth, and after with more, as you shall see occasion require; and when you beginne to cloath the horse, then shall you dresse, curry, and rub him also. Now for as much as it is a Rule with ignorant horse-men, that if they have but the name of keeping a hunting-horse, they will with all care (without any reason) lay many cloathes upon him, as if it were a speciall physick; you shall know they are much deceived therein, and may sooner doe hurt then good with multiplicity of cloathes: therefore to cloath a horse right, cloth him according to the weather, and the temper of his body: & thus, if you see your horse be sleighr, smooth and well-coloured, then cloath him temperately, as with a single cloath of canvase or sacke-cloth at the most;

moſt; and if then as the yeare growes colder, you finde his haire riſe or ſtare about his neck, flanckes, or outward parts, then you ſhall adde too a woollen cloath, or more if need require, till his haire fall ſmooth againe, holding it for your rule, that a rough coat ſhewes want of cloaths, and a ſmooth coate, cloathing enough: yet if your horſe have beene cleane fed, taken exerciſe ſufficient, and hath not much glut within him, if then you finde that in the night hee ſweateth in his cloathes, then it is a ſigne he is over fed: but if he be foule inwardly, or hath not ſweat formerly, and now ſweates comming to good feeding, then you ſhall augment rather then diminiſh any cloathing, for his foulneſſe but then breaketh out, and being evacuated, he will come to dryneſſe of body againe, and ſo continue all the yeare after: and ſurely for an ordinary proportion of cloathes, I hold a Canvaſe cloth, and a cloath of Houſe-wives woollen to be at full ſufficient for a hunting-horſe.

A Hunting-horſe would be dreſt in his dayes of Reſt, twice a day, that is, before he goe to his morning watering, and before he goe to his evening watering: for the manner of his dreſſing, after hee is uncloathed, you ſhall firſt curry him from the tips of the eare to the ſetling on of his taile, all his whole body moſt entirely over with an iron combe, his legs under the knees and cambrels onely excepted; then you ſhall duſt him, then curry him againe all over with a round bruſh of Briſtles, then duſt him the ſecond time, then rub all the looſe haires away with your hands wet in cleane water, and ſo rub till the horſe bee as dry as at the firſt, then rub all his body and limbes over with an haire-cloth: laſtly, rubbe him over with a fine white linnen rubber, then picke his eyes, noſtrils, ſheath, cods, tuell, and feet very cleane, and ſo

Of dreſſing the hunting horſe.

cloath him, and ſtop him round with wiſpes, if you water within the houſe, otherwiſe ſaddle him after his body is wrapt about in a woollen cloth, and ſo ride him forth to the water.

Of watering the hunting horſe.

The beſt water for a hunting horſe, is either a running River, or a cleare ſpring remote from the ſtable a mile, or a mile and a halfe at moſt, and neere unto ſome plaine peece of ground, where you may ſcope and gallop after hee hath drunke; and as ſoone as you bring your horſe to the water, let him take his full draught without trouble or interruption: then gallop and ſcope him up and downe a little, and ſo bring him to the water againe, and let him drinke what hee pleaſe: and then gallop him againe: and thus doe till you finde he will drink no more, then having ſcop't him a little, walke him with all gentleneſſe home, and there cloath him up, ſtop him round with great ſoft wiſpes, and ſo let him ſtand an houre upon his bridle, and then feed him.

Of feeding the hunting horſe.

To ſpeak firſt of the food for hunting horſes, the moſt ordinary is good ſweet ſound oates neither throughly dryed with age, or elſe on the kilne, or in the Sun, and if your horſe be either low of fleſh, or not of perfect ſtomache, it to two parts of thoſe oates you adde a third part of cleane ſide beanes, it ſhall be very good and wholſome, and if your horſe be in diet for a match, and have loſt his ſtomach, if then you cauſe thoſe beanes to be ſpelred upon a milne, and ſo mixt with oates, it will recover him. The next food which is ſomewhat ſtronger and better, is bread thus made: take two buſhels of good clean beanes and one buſhel of wheat, and grinde them together, then through a fine Raunge, bole out the quantity of two peckes of pur meale, and bake it in two or three loaves by it ſelfe, and the reſt ſift through a meale five; and

knead

knead it with water and good flore of Barme, and so bake it in great loaves, and with the courser Bread feede your horse in his rest, and with the finer against the daies of sore labour. Now for the houres of his feeding, it shall bee in the morning after his comming from water, an houre after high noone: after his comming from his evening water, and at nine or ten of the clocke at night upon the dayes of his Rest, but upon the dayes of his exercise, two houres after he is throughly cold inwardly and outwardly, and then after according to the houres before mentioned. Lastly, for the proportion of food, you shall keepe no certaine quantity, but according to the horses stomacke, that is to say, you shall feede him by a little at once, so long as he eates with a good appetite, but when hee begins to trifle or fumble with his meate, then to give him no more. Now for his hay, you shall see that it be dry short uplandish hay, and if it be sweet, respect not how coarse or rough it is, such it is more to scoure his teeth and coole his stomack, then for any nourishment expected from it.

Touching the horses exercise, which is only in the following of the hounds, you shall be sure to traine him after those which are most swift & speedy, for so you shal know the truth, and not be deceived in your opinion. Touching the dayes, it shal be twice a weeke at least, but most commonly thrice. As for the quantity of his exercise, it must be according to his foulenesse or cleannesse: for if he be very foule, you must then exercise moderately to breake his grease: if halfe foule, halfe cleane, then somewhat more to melt his grease; and if altogether cleane, then you may take what you please of him (provided that you doe nothing to discourage his spirits, to abate his mettall, or to lame his limbes) and after every

The exercise of the horse.

dayes exercise bee assured to give him either the same night, or the next day following, something by way of scouring, or otherwise, to take away the grease formerly melted, by meanes whereof you shall bee ever sure to keepe your horse in all good health and perfection.

The scouring of the horse.

The best and most excellentest way to scoure or purge your horse from all grease, glut or filthinesse within his body, which is a secret hitherto was never either sufficiently taught or perfectly learned, is to take of Annis seedes three ounces, of Cummine-seedes six drams, of Carthamus a dramme and a halfe, of Fennegreeke seed one ounce two drams, of Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, beate all these to a fine powder, and searse them, then take of sallet oyle a pinte and two ounces, of hony a pound and a halfe, and of white wine foure pints, then with as much fine white meale as will suffice, make all into a strong stiffe paste, and knead and worke it well: this paste keepe in a cleane cloth, for it will last long, and after your horse hath beene hunted, and is at night or in the morning exceeding thirsty, take a ball thereof, as much as a mans fist, and wash and dissolve it in a gallon or two of cold water, and it will make the water looke white like milke: then offer it the horse to drink in the darke, least the colour displease him: if he drinke it, then feede him, but if he refuse to drinke it, yet care not, but let him fast without drink till he take it, which assuredly he will doe in twice or thrice offering, and after once he hath taken it, be then assured he will forsake any other drinke for it: of this drinke your horse can never take too much nor too oft, if he have exercise: otherwise it feedes too fore. For all inward infirmities whatsoever it is a present remedy: therefore I would not wish any horse man of vertue at any time to be without it, and be-

ing

ing once made, it will laſt three or foure moneths at leaſt.

After your horſe hath beene exerciſed either with hunting, running, traine-ſents or otherwiſe: you ſhall ever coole him well in the field before you bring him home: but being come to the ſtable, you ſhall neither waſh nor walke, but inſtantly houſe him: give him ſtore of freſh litter, and rub him therewith, and with dry cloathes, till there bee not a wet haire about him, then cloath him with his ordinary cloathes, and wiſpe him round: then caſt another ſpare cloth over him, with which you may bate at your pleaſure, and ſo let him ſtand till it be time to feed him. And thus you may keep any hunting horſe either for match or otherwiſe, in as good ſtate and ſtrength as any horſe man in this Kingdome, though he exceed you farre both in reputation and experience. Ordering a horſe after exerciſe.

CHAP. VI.

Of the ordering and dyeting of the running horſe.

IF any Husbandman have his minde taken up onely with the delight of running horſes, which is a noble ſport, and though not of ſo long indurance, yet equall with any before ſpoke of, hee ſhall for the bettering of his knowledge give to his memory theſe few rules following, by which he ſhall rightly order and dyet him.

First, for his taking up from graſſe (for there for order ſake we muſt firſt begin) it ſhall bee at the ſame time of the yeare, and after the ſame manner that you tooke up your hunting horſe, and till you have enfeamed him, hardened his fleſh, taken away his inward greaſe, and brought him to a good perfectneſſe of wind, you ſhall cloath him, dreſſe him, water him, feede him, exerciſe him, purge him and order him, after labour, in all points and all things as you did your hunting horſe. Of his taking up.

Of cloathing him.

When he is thus cleane of body and winde, you shall then lay on him some more cloathes then you did on your Hunting horse, to purge his body a little the more, and to make him the more apt to sweat & evacuate humours as they shall grow: the ordinary quantity whereof would bee a warme narrow wollen cloath about his body, on either side his heart, then a faire white sheete, a woollen cloth above it, and a canvase cloath or two above it, and before his breast a woollen cloath at least two double: he would continually stand upon cleane litter, and have his stable very darke, and perfumed with Iuniper, when as the strength of his dung shall annoy it.

Of dressing him.

For his dressing, it shall bee in all points done as you did to your hunting horse, only to dresse him once a day is sufficient, and that ever in the after-noone: but for rubbing his limbes or body with dry cloathes or wispes, you shall doe that as often as you come into the stable, provided that you turne but his clothes up, but not take them from his body.

Of watering him.

You shall water your running horse, as you watered your hunting horse, and give him the same exercise after it, only you shall not bring him into the stable of at least an houre or more after he is watered.

Of feeding him.

The best food for your running horse, is either good sweet oates well dryed, sunned, and beaten, or bread made of two parts wheat, and but one part Beanes, and boulted, and sifted, and knodden, as was before shewed: only if you adde to your better sort of bread the whites of twenty or thirty egges, and with the barme a little Ale also, it will be much the better; for you shall not respect how little water you use at all: the houres you feed in, and the quantity of the food shall bee the same, and in the same manner as was mentioned before, for the hunting

hunting horſe, yet with theſe obſervations, that if your horſe be very leane, ſickely, and have a weake ſtomacke, that then you may as before is ſhewed, give him with his oats a few ſpelted beanes, or elſe waſh his oats in ſtrong Ale or Beere, or in the whites of a couple of egges.

Touching his exerciſe, it conſiſteth in two kindes, the one ayring, the other courſing: Ayring is a moderate and gentle exerciſe, which you ſhall uſe morning and evening, by riding or leading your horſe a foot pace (but Riding is better, and leſſe in danger of cold) in the morning after his water up to the hils, and in the evening after his water by the rivers ſide, by the ſpace of an houre or two together; and before you leade him forth to aire, you ſhall be ſure to give him a rere egge broken into his mouth, as ſoone as his bridle is put on, for it will increaſe winde: and this ayring you ſhall by no meanes forbeare, but upon his dayes of purging or ſweating, or when it much raineth, for then to ayre is unwholeſome. Again, if your horſe be very fat, you ſhall ayre before Sun riſe, and after Sun ſet: but if he be leane, then you ſhall let him have all the ſtrength and comfort of the Sun you can deviſe; and during this ayring, you ſhall be ſure that your horſe bee cloathed very warme, eſpecially before the breaſt, and on each ſide the heart, for cold to a running horſe is mortall. Of his exercise by ayring.

You ſhall courſe your horſe according to his ſtrength and ability of body, that is to ſay, twice a weeke, thrice, or as oft as you ſee cauſe, and you ſhall courſe him ſometimes in his cloathes to make him ſweate, and conſume greaſe; and that muſt be done moderately and gently; and ſometimes without his cloath, to increaſe wind; and that ſhall be done ſharply and ſwiftly: you ſhall by keeping your horſe faſting the night before, be ſure that his body Exercise by courſing.

body be empty before he do course: to wash his tongue and nostrils with vinegar, or to pisse in his mouth ere you take his backe is very wholesome: you shall leade him in your hand well & warme clothed to the course, and there uncloath him, and rub his limbs well: then having courst him, after a little breath taking cloth him againe, and so Ride him home, there rub him throughly, and let him stand till he be fully cold, which perceived, let his first meate you give him, be a handfull or two of the eares of pollard wheate: then after, his ordinary foode as afore-said.

Of sweats. There is also another exercise for your running-horse, which is, sweats in his cloathes, either abroad or in the house, for sweats in his cloathes abroad, they are those which are taken upon the course, & are formerly spoke of, that they must bee given by a moderate galloping, no man Running, and as soone as your horse hath past over his course, and is in a high sweat, you shall instantly have him home, and there lay more cloathes upon him, and keepe him stirring till he have sweat so in the stable an houre or more; then abate his cloathes, by little and little, till he be perfectly cooled and dryed, which you must further, by rubbing him continually with drye cloathes, and by laying dry cloathes on, and taking the wet away: but for sweates in his cloathes, without any exercise abroad, you shall give them eyther when the weather is so much unseasonable, that you cannot goe forth, or when your horse is so much in danger of lamenesse, that you dare not straine him: and you shall doe it thus: first take a blanket folded and warmed very hot, and wrap it about his body, then over it lay two or three more, and wisp them round, then over them as many coverlids, and pin them fast and close; then make the

horse

horſe ſtirre up and downe in the ſtable, till hee begin to ſweat; then lay on more clothes, and as the ſweat trickleth downe his face, ſo rub it away with dry clothes, till he have ſweat ſufficiently: then (as before is ſhewed) abate the clothes by little and little, and rub him in every part, till he be as dry as at firſt.

After every courſe or ſweat, you ſhall ſcoure or purge your horſe in the ſame manner, and with the ſame medicine that you did your hunting horſe; for it is the beſt that can by art be invented, being both a purge and a reſtorative, cleanſing and comforting all the parts of a horſes body: but if you thinke it purgeth not enough, then you ſhall take twenty Raiſings of the Sunne, the ſtones pick'd out, and ten Figs ſlit in the midſt, boile them in a pottle of faire running water, till it come to be thicke, then mixe it with powder of Liquoras, Aniſeeds, and Sugar-candy, till it come to a ſtiffe paſte, then make pretty round balls thereof, and roll them up in Butter, and give your horſe three or foure of them the next morning after his ſweat or courſe, and ride him an houre after, and then ſet him up warme. Of ſcouring him.

After your horſe hath beene cours'd or ſweat, and is as before ſaid, cold and dry, you ſhall then unbridle him, give him ſome few wheat cares, and then at an houre or two after, give him a very ſweet maſh, then ſome bread, after which, at his due houre dreſſe him, and give him when you find him thirſty, ſome cold water, with a ball of your leaven diſſolved into it, and ſo let him ſtand till you feed him for all night. Ordering after exerciſe.

Courſe not your horſe ſore for at leaſt foure or five daies before you runne your match, leſt the foreneſſe of his limbes abate him of his ſpeed. Generall rules for a running Horſe.

Except your horſe be a very foule feeder, muzzle him

not

not above two or three nights before his match, and the night before his bloudy courses.

Give your horse as well his gentle courses as his sharp courses upon the Race he must runne, that hee may as well finde comfort as displeasure thereon.

In training of your horse, observe not the number of the miles, but the labour fit for your horse.

Be sure upon the match day that your horse be empty and that he take his Rest untroubled, till you prepare to leade him forth.

Shooe your horse ever a day before you run him, that the paine of the hammers knocks may be out of his feet.

Saddle your horse on the Race day in the stable before you leade him forth, and fixe both the pannell and the girths to his back and sides with shooe-makers wax, to prevent all dangers.

Leade your horse to his course with all gentlenesse, and give him leave to smell to other horses dung, that thereby he may be inticed to stale and empty his body as he goes.

When you come to the place where you must start, first rub his limbes well, then uncloath him, then take his backe, and the word given, start him with all gentlenesse and quietnesse that may be, least doing any thing rashly you happen to choake him in his owne winde.

And thus much for the ordering and dyeting of the Running horse, and the particularities belonging to the same.

Chap. VII.

The ordering of the travelling horse.

NOw for our Husbandmans travailing horse, which is to carry him in his journies, and about his busi-

nesse

neſſe in the Country, he ſhall firſt feed him with the haſt ſweet hay, dry oates, or dry beanes and oates mixt together: in his trauaile hee ſhall feed him according to his ſtomache, more or leſſe, and in his Reſt at a certaine proportion, as halfe a pecke at each watering, is vtterly ſufficient. Generall rules for a trauelling Horſe.

In your trauaile feede your horſe early, that hee may take his Reſt ſoone.

In trauelle by no meanes waſh nor walke your horſe, but be ſure to rub him cleane.

Water him a mile before you come to your Inne, or more as ſhall lye in your iourney, or if you faile thereof, forbeare it till next morning, for water hath often done hurt, want of water never did any.

Let your horſe neyther eate nor drinke, when hee is extreame hoe, for both are vnwholeſome.

When the dayes are extreame hot, labour your horſe morning and evening, and forbeare high noone.

Take not your ſaddle off ſuddenly, but at leiſure, and laying on the cloth ſet on the ſaddle againe till he be cold.

Litter your horſe deepe, and in the dayes of his Reſt, let it alſo lye vnder him.

Dreſſe your horſe twice a day when he reſts, and once when he trauailes.

If the horſe bee ſtoned, let him goe to foyle, and bee purged with graſſe in May, a moneth is time long enough, and that graſſe which growes in Orchards vnder trees is beſt.

Let blood ſpring and fall, for they are the beſt times to prevent ſickneſſes.

In your iourneying light at every ſteepe hill, for it is a great Refreſhing and comfort to your horſe.

Before you ſleepe every night in your iourney, ſee all your

your horses feet stopt with Ore dung, for it taketh away the heat of travaile and forbatings.

Many other necessary Rules there are, but so depending upon these already shewed, that who so keepeth them, shall not be ignorant of any of the rest, for they differ more in name then nature.

CHAP. VIII.

How to cure all generall outward sicknesses in horses, which trouble the whole body: of Fevers of all sorts, Plagues, infections, and such like.

Sicknesses in generall are of two kindes, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member: the first hidden, and not visible, the other apparant and knowne by his outward demonstration. Of the first then which offendeth the whole body, are Fevers of all sorts, as the Quotidian, the Tertian, the Quartan, the Continuall, the Hittique, the Fevers in Autumne, in Summer, or in Winter, the Fever by surfeit, Fever Pestilent, Fever accidental, or the generall plague. They are all known by these signes; much trembling, panting, and sweating, a sullen countenance that was wont to be cheerefull, hot breath, faintnes in labour, decay of stomack, and costivenesse in the body: any, or all of which when you perceive, first let the horse blood, and after give him this drinke: Take of *Selladine*, rootes and leaves and all, a good handfull, as much *Orniewood*, and as much *Rew*, wash them well, and then bruise them in a morter, which done, boyle them in a quart of Ale well, then straine them, and adde to the liquour halfe a pound of sweet butter, then being but luke warme, give it the horse to drinke: or halfe an ounce of *Diapentis* in a pinte of Muskadine.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Head-ach, Frenzie or Staggers.

THe ſignes to know theſe diſeaſes, which indeed are all of one nature, and worke all one effect of mortality, are hanging downe of the head, watry eies, rage and reeling: and the cure is, to let the horſe bloud in the necke three mornings together, and every morning to take a great quantity: then after each mornings bloud-letting, to give the horſe this drinke. Take a quart of Ale, and boyle it with a big white-bread cruſt, then take it from the fire, and diſſolve three or foure ſpoonefuls of honey into it, then luke-warme give it the horſe to drinke, and cover his temples over with a playſter of pitch, and keep his head exceeding warme, let his meate be little, and his ſtable darke. But to give him the former quantity of *Diapente*, eyther in Muskadine, or hony water, is the beſt cure.

CHAP. X.

Of the ſleeping evill.

THe ſleeping Evill or Lethargy in horſes proceeds from cold, fleamy, moyſt humours, which binde up the vitall parts, and makes them dull and heavy: The ſignes are, continuall ſleeping, or deſire thereunto. The cure is, to keepe him much waking, and twice in one week to give him as much ſweete Sope (in nature of a pill) as a Ducks egge, and then after give him to drinke a little new milke and honey, which is the onely cure at the firſt, for this diſeaſe. But to bee certaine, I pray looke in my Maſter-piece, and there you ſhall finde of the infirmity more largely diſcourſed of, this being but a generall Cure of all Cattle, and not particularly handled, of horſes, as that is. The Cure.

CHAP.

Chap. 11.

Of the Falling evill, Planet-strooke, Night-Mare, or Palsey.

THough these Diseases have severall faces, and looke as though there were much difference betweene them, yet they are in nature all one, and proceed all from one offence, which is onely cold flegmaticke humours, ingendred about the braine, and benumming the senses, weakning the members, sometimes causing a horse to fall downe, and then it is called the Falling evill: sometimes weakning but one member onely, then it is called Planet-strooke, sometimes oppressing a horses stomack, and making him sweat in his sleepe, and then it is called the night-Mare: And sometimes spoyling an especiall member, by some strange contraction, and then it is called a Palsey. The cure for any of these infirmities, is to give the horse this purging pill: Take of *Terre* three spoonfuls of sweet butter the like quantity, beate them well together with the powder of *Liquoras*, *Anny seeds*, & *Sugar-candy*, till it be like paste, then make it into three round balls, and put into each ball two or three cloves of Garlicke, and so give them unto the horse, observing to warme him both before and after, and keepe him fasting two or three houres likewise, both before and after.

The Cure.

Chap. XII.

Of the generall Crampe, or Convulsion of sinewes.

CRamps are taken to bee the contracting or drawing together of the Sinewes of any one member: but Convulsions are when the whole body, from the setting on of the head to the extremest parts are generally contracted and stifned. The cure of either is, first to chafe

The Cure.

and

and rub the member contracted with Vinegar and common oile, and then to wrap it all over with wet Hay, or rotten Litter, or else with wet woolen clothes, either of which, is a present remedy.

Chap. XIII.

Of any cold or cough whatsoever, wet or dry, or for any consumption or putrefaction of the lungs whatsoever.

A Cold is got by unnaturall heats, and too sudden coolings, and these colds ingender coughs, and those coughs putrefaction, or rottennesse of the lungs. The cure therefore of them all in generall, is, to take a handfull or two of the white and greenish *Mosse* which growes upon an old Oke pole, or any old Oke wood: and boile it in a quart of Milke till it be thick, and being cold turned to Jelly, then straine it, and give it the horse luke-warme every morning till his cough end: Or else take three quarters of an ounce of the conserve of *Elecampane*, and dissolve it in a pint of Sacke, and luke warme give it the horse fasting, then ride him after it, and set him up warme, feede as ordinary times, thus doe three mornings together. The Cure.

Chap. XIV.

Of the running Glaunders, or mourning of the Chine.

TAke of *Antipleurisme* two drams, of *Tussilaginis* made into powder as much, then mixing them together with *Turpentine* till they be like paste, and making therof little cakes, drie them before the fire: then take a Chafing-dish and coales, and laying one or two of the cakes thereon, cover them with a Tunnel, and then the smoake rising, put the Tunnell into the horses nostrils, and let the smoke goe up into his head: which

done, ride the Horse fasting, doe thus once every morning before he be watered, till the running at his nostrills cease, and the kernels under his chaps weare away.

CHAP. XV.

Of hide-bound, or consumption of the flesh.

HIde-bound or consumption of the flesh, proceedeth from unreasonable travell, disorderly diet, and many other fits. It is known by a generall dislike and leanness over the whole body, and by the sticking of the skin close to the body, in such sort, that it will not rise from the body. The cure is first to let the horse blood, and then give him in drinke three or foure mornings together a quart of new Milke, with two spoonfuls of Honey, and two ounces of Anniseeds powdered: then let his food be either sodden Barley, warme Graines and Salt, or Beans steeped in Milke, and drinke Mashwarme

The Cure.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the breast-plue, or any other sickness proceeding from the heart, as the Anticor, and such like.

THese diseases proceed from too much feeding, and much fatnesse: the signes are, a faultring in his foreleg, dislikenesse to bow downe his necke, and a trembling over his body. The cure is, to let him blood, and give him three mornings together two spoonfuls of Diapente, in a quart of Ale or Beere, for it alone putteth away all infection from the heare.

The Cure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of tyred Horses.

IF your horse be tyred, either by journying, or in any riding match, your best help for him, is to give him warme

warme urine to drinke, and letting him blood in the mouth, to suffer him to licke up and swallow the same. Then if you can come where any Nettles are, to rub his mouth and sheath well therewith: then gently to ride him until you come to your resting place, where let him up very warme; and before you goe to bed, give him five spoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ* to drinke, and as much provender as he will eate. The next morning rub his legges with sheeps-foot oile, and it will bring fresh nimblenesse unto his sinewes.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of diseases in the Stomach, as surfeits, loathing of meate or drinke, or such like.

If your horse with the glut of provender, or euill raw food, have given such offence to his stomach, that he casteth up all he eateth or drinketh, you shall not give him a comfortable drench, as *Diapente*, or *Treaphamicon* in Ale or Beere; and then keeping him fasting, let him have no food, but what hee eateth out of your hand, which would be bread well baked & old, and after every two or three bits, a locke of sweet hay: and his drinke would be only new Milke, till his stomach have gotten strength: and in a bag, you shall commonly hang at his nose sowre browne-bread steeped in Vinegar, at which he must ever smell, and his stomach will quickly come againe to his first strength.

CHAP. XIX.

Of swelling in the body.

Swelling in the body is of all infirmities the mortallest and soonest gotten: it proceedeth from intemperate riding a horse when he is fat, and then suddenly suffering

him to take cold: then washing a fat horse, there is nothing sooner bringeth this infirmity. The signes are sadnesse of countenance, staring haire, stiffnesse of limbe, and
The Cure. losse of belly: and the cure is onely to give him wholesome strong meat, as bread of cleane Beanes, and warme drinke, and for two or three mornings together a quart of Ale, brewed with Pepper, and Cynamon, and an ounce of *London Treacle*.

Chap. XX.

Of the hungry Evill.

THe hungry Evill, is an unnaturall and over-hastie greedinesse in a horse, to devour his meat faster than he can chew it, and is only knowne by his greedy snatching at his meat, as if he would devoure it whole: the cure is, to give him to drinke Milke and Wheat-meale mixt
The cure. together by a quart at a time, and to feed him with provender by a little and a little, till he forsake it.

Chap. XXI.

Of the diseases of the Liver, as inflammations, obstructions, and consumptions.

THe Liver, which is the vessell of blood, is subject to many diseases, accoot ding to the distemperature of the blood, and the signes to know it, is a stinking breath, and
The cure. a mastiall looking towards his body: and the cure is, to take *Aristolochia longa*, and boile it in running water, till the halfe part be consumed, and let the horse drinke continually thereof, and it will cure all evils about the Liver or any inward conduits of blood.

Chap. XXII.

Of the disaster of the Gall, and especially of the Yellowes.

FRom the overflowing of the Gall, or rather want of the Gall, which is the vessell of choller, spring many mortall

mortall diseases, especially the Yellowes, which is an extreme faint mortall sicknesse, if it be not prevented betime: the signes are yellownesse of the eyes and skin, and chiefly underneath his upper lip next unto his foreteeth, a sudden & faint falling down by the high way, or in the stable, and an universall sweat over all the body. The cure is, first to let the horse blood in the necke, in the mouth, and under the eyes; then take two penny-worth of *Saffron*, which being dryed and made into fine powder, mixe it with sweet *Butter*, and in manner of a pill give it in balls to the horse, three mornings together, let his drinke be warme, and his hay sprinkled with water: A quart of a strong decoction of *Salladine* helps it also. The cure.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the sicknesse of the Spleene.

THe Spleene which is the vessell of Melancholy, when it is overcharged therewith, growes painfull, hard, and great, in such sort, that sometimes it is visible. The signes to know it is much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continuall looking to his left side only. The cure is, take *Agrimony*, and boile a good quantity of it in the water, which the horse shall drinke; and chopping the leaves small, mixe them very well with sweet *May-butter*, and give the horse two or three good round balls thereof, in the manner of Pills. The cure.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the dropsie or evill habit of the body.

THe Dropsie is that evill habit of the body, which ingendred by surfeits and unreasonable labour, altereth the colours and complexions of horses, and changeth the

haires, in ſuch an unnaturall ſort, that a man ſhall not know the Beaſt, with which he hath beene moſt familiar.

The cure. The cure is to take a handfull or two of *Wormwood*; and boiling it in Ale or Beere, a quart or better, give it the horſe to drinke luke-warme, morning and evening, and let him only drinke his water at noone time of the day.

Chap. XXV.

Of the Collicke, Belly-ake, and Belly-bound.

THe Chollicke or Belly-ake is a fretting, gnawing, or ſwelling of the Belly, or great bag, proceeding from windie humors, or from eating of greene corne or pulſe, hot graines without Salt or labour, or bread dow-bak'd:

The cure. and Belly-bound, is when a horſe cannot dung. The cure of the Chollicke or Bely-ake, is, to take good ſtore of the herb *Dill*, and boile it in the water you give your horſe to drinke; but if he cannot dung, then you ſhall boile in his water good ſtore of the herb called *Fenegreek*, and it will make him looſe without danger or hurting.

Chap. XXVI.

Of the Laxe or Bloody-flixe.

THe Laxe or Bloody-flix, is an unnaturall looſeneſſe in a horſes body, which not being ſtaied, will for want of other excrement, make a horſe void blood onely.

The cure. The cure is, take a handfull of the herbe *Shepherds-purſe*, and boile it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and when it is luke-warme, take the ſeeds of the herbe *Wood-roſe* ſtampt and put it therein, and give it the horſe to drinke.

Chap.

Chap. XXVII.

Of the falling of the Fundament.

THis commeth through miſtike and weakneſſe, and the cure is: Take *Towne-creſſes*, and having dried them to powder, with your hand put up the Fundament, and then ſtrow the powder thereon, after it lay a little Hony thereon, and then ſtrow more of the powder, mixt with the powder of *Comin*, and it helpeth. The cure.

Chap. XXVIII.

Of Bots and Wormes of all ſorts.

THe Bots and gnawing of Wormes, is a grievous paine, and the ſignes to know them, is the horſes oft beating his belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much deſire to lie on his backe. The cure is, take the leaves chopt of the herbe *Seven*, and mix it with *Hony* and *Butter*, and making two or three balls thereof, make the horſe ſwallow them downe, and it will helpe him. The cure.

Chap. XXIX.

Of the paine in the Kidnies, paine piſſe, or the ſtone.

ALL theſe diſeaſes ſpring from one ground, which is onely gravell and hard matter gathered together in the Kidnies, and ſo ſtopping the conduits of Urine: the ſignes are only that the horſe will oft ſtraine to piſſe, but cannot. The cure is to take a handfull of *Maiden-haire*, and ſteepe it all night in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the horſe to drinke every morning till he be well: this will breake any ſtone whatſoever in a horſe. The cure.

Chap. XXX.

Of the Strangullion.

THis is a ſoreneſſe in the horſes yard, and a hot burning ſmarting when hee piſſeth: the ſignes are, hee

will piſſe oft, yet but a drop or two at once. The cure is, The Cure. to boile in the water which he drinketh, good ſtore of the herbe *Hayth*, or *Bugs-foxtell*, and it will cure him.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of piſſing blood.

THis commeth with over-travelling a horſe, or travelling a horſe ſore in the winter when hee goeth to graſſe. The cure is: take *Ariſtolochia longa*, The Cure. a handfull, and boile it in a quart of Ale, and give it the horſe to drinke luke-warme, and give him alſo reſt.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Calt-evill, watering of the yard, falling of the yard, ſhedding the Seede.

ALL theſe evills proceed from much luſt in a horſe: The cure. and the cure is, the powder of the herbe *Avis*, and the leaves of *Dettany*, ſtampe them with white *Wine*, to a moyſt ſalve, and annoint the ſore therewith, and it will heale all imperfection in the yard: but if the horſe ſhed his ſeed, then beat *Venice Turpentine* and *Sugar* together, and give him every morning a good round ball thereof, untill the ſtone ſtay.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the particular diſeaſes in Mares, barrennesſe, conſumption, rage of love, caſting Foales, hardneſſe to foale, and how to make a Mare caſt her Foale.

IF you have your Mare barren, let good ſtore of the herbe *Agnus caſtus* be boiled in the water ſhe drinketh. If you would have her fruitfull, then boile good ſtore of *Mother-wort* in the water which ſhe drinketh: If ſhee loſe her belly, which ſheweth a conſumption of the

wombe, you shall then give her a quart of Brine to drink, *Mugwort* being boiled therein. If your Mare through pride of keeping, grow into too extreme lust, so that she will neglect her food, through the violence of her fleshly appetite, as it is often seene amongst them, you shall house her for two or three daies, and give her every morning a ball of Butter and *Agnus castus* chop't togither. If you would have your Mare to cast a Foale, take a handfull of *Deitony*, and boile it in a quart of Ale, and it will deliver her presently. If she cannot foale, take the herbe *Horse-tayle*, and either drie it or stamp it, and take the powder or the juyce, and mixe it with strong Ale, and give it the Mare, and it will help her. If your Mare from former bruisings or strokes be apt to cast her Foales, as many are, you shall keepe her at grasse very warme, and once in a weeke, give her a good warme mash of drinke: this secretly knitteth beyond expectation.

Chap. XXXIIII.

Of drinking venome, as Horse-leaches, Hens-dung, or such like.

IF your horse have drunke Horse-leaches, Hens-dung, feathers, or such like venemous thing, which you shall know by his pansing, swelling, or scouring, you shall take the herbe *Sow-thistle*, and drying it, beat it into powder, and put three spoonfulls thereof into a quart of Ale, and give it the horse to drinke.

Chap. XXXV.

Of Suppositaries, Clysters, and Purgations.

IF your horse by sicknesse, strict dyet, or too vehement travell, grow dry and costive in his body, as it is ordinary, the easiest meanes in extremity to help him, is to give him

him a Suppoſitary: the beſt of which is, to take a Candle of foure in the pound, and cut off five inches at the bigger end, and thruſting it up a good way with your hand into his fundament, preſently clap downe his taile, and hold it hard to his tuell a quarter of an houre, or halfe an houre: and then give him liberty to dung; but if this be not ſtrong enough; then you ſhall give him a Clyſter, and that is, take foure handfulls of the herbe *Aniſe*, and boile it in a pottle of running water, till halfe be conſumed, then take the decoction, and mixe it with a pint of Sallet-oile, and a pretty quantity of ſalt, and with a clyſter-pipe give it him at his tuell. But if this be too weake, then give him a purgation thus: Take twenty *Raiſins* of the Sunne without ſtones, and ten *Figs* ſlit, boile them in a pottle of running-water, till it come to a jelly; then mix it with the pouder of *Liquoras*, *Aniſeeds*, and *Sugar-candy*, till it be like paſte, then make it into balls, and roll it in ſweet Butter, and ſo give it the horſe, to the quantity of three Hen egs.

Chap. XXXVI.

Of Neeſings and Frictions.

THere be other two excellent helps for ſicke horſes; as Frictions and Neeſings: the firſt to comfort the outward parts of the body, when the vitall powers are aſtoniſhed; the other to purge the head when it is ſtopt with phlegme, cold, or other thicke humors. And of Frictions, the beſt is *Vinegar* and *Peach-greaſe* melted together, and very hot chafed into the horſes body againſt the haire. And to make a horſe neeſe, there is nothing better, than to take a bunch of *Pellitory* of *Spaine*, and binding it unto a ſticke, thruſt it up a horſes noſtrill, and it will make him neeſe without hurt or violence.

Chap.

Chap. XXXVII.

Of diseases in the eyes: as watry-eyes, blood-shotten-eyes, dim eyes, moone eyes, stroke in the eye, wart in the eye, inflamnation in the eye, Pearle, Pin, Web, or Haw.

VNto the Eye belongeth many diseases, all which have their true signes in their names, and as touching that which is watry, blood-shotten, dim, moone, stricken or inflamed, they have all one cure. The cure is, take *Worme-wood*, and beat it in a Mortar with the gall of a Bull, straine it, and annoint the horses eyes therewith, and it is an approved remedy. But for the Wart, Pearle, Pin or Web, which are evills growne in, and upon the eye, to take them off, take the juyce of the herbe *Betin*, and wash his eyes therewith, and it will weare the spots away: For the Haw every Smith can cut it out. The cure.

Chap. XXXVIII.

Of the Impostume in the eare, Pole evill, Fistula, swelling after blood-letting, any gald back, canker in the Withers, Sitfast, Wens, Nawell-gall, or any hollow ulcer.

THese diseases are so apparent and common, that they need no further description but their names, and the most certaine cure is to take clay of a mud, or lome wall, without Lime, the strawes and all, and boiling it in strong Vinegar, apply it plaisterwise to the sore, and it will of it owne nature search to the bottome, and heale it: provided, that if you see any dead or proud flesh arise, that then you either eate or cut it away. The cure.

Chap. XXXIX.

Of the Vives.

FOr the Vives, which is an inflammation of the kirnels betweene the chap and the necke of the horse: take

Pepper

Pepper one penny worth, of *Swines greaſe* one ſpoonfull, the juyce of a handfull of *Rew*, *Vineger* two ſpoonfulls, mixe them together, and then put it equally into both the horſes eares, and then tie them up with two flat laces, then ſhake the eares, that the medicine may goe downe, which done, let the horſe blood in the necke, and in the temple veines, and it is a certaine cure.

CHAP. XL.

Of the ſtrangle, or any Bile, Botch, or other Impoſtume whatſoever.

ALL theſe diſeaſes are of one nature, being only hard Biles or impoſtumes gathered together by evill humours, either betweene the chaps, or elſewhere on the body. The cure is, take *Southernwood*, and dry it to powder, and with *Barley meale*, and the yolke of an Egge, make it into a ſalve, and lay it to the Impoſtume, and it will ripen it, breake it, and heale it.

The cure.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the Canker in the Noſe, or any other part of the body.

TO heale any Canker in what part ſoever it be: take the juyce of *Plantane*, as much *Vineger*, and the ſame weight of the powder of *Allom*, and with it annoint the ſore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it and cure it.

The cure.

CHAP. XLII.

Of ſtaunching of blood, whether it be at the noſe, or proceede from any wound.

IF your horſe bleed violently at the noſe, and will not be ſtaid, then you ſhall take *Bettony*, and ſtampe it in a mortar with Bay-ſalt, or other white Salt, and ſtop it into the horſes noſe, or apply it to the wound, and it will ſtaunch it:

it: but if you be ſuddenly taken, as riding by the high way, or otherwiſe, and cannot get this herbe, you ſhall then take any woollen cloth, or any felt Hay, and with a knife ſcrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the bleeding place, and it will ſtaunch it preſently.

Chap. XLIII.

Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, as bloody Rifts, Igs, Lampas, Camery, inflammation, tongue-hurt, or the Barbs.

IF you finde any infirmity in your horſes mouth, as the bloody Rifts, which are chaps or rifts in the palate of the horſes mouth: the Igs, which is a little puſtels or bladders within the horſes lips: the Lampas, which is an excreſſion of fleſh above the teeth: the Camery, which is little warts in the roofe of the mouth: Inflammation, which is bliſters: Barbs, which are two little paps under the tongue, or any hurt on the tongue by bit or otherwiſe: you ſhall take the leaves of *Wormewood*, and the leaves of *Shirwit*, and beat them in a mortar with a little hony, and with it annoint the ſores, and it will heale them, as for the Lampas, they muſt be burnt away, which the ignorant eſt Smith can eaſily doe. The cure.

Chap. XLIV.

Of paine in the teeth, or looſe teeth.

FOr any paine in the teeth, take *Bettony*, and ſeeth it in Ale or Vinegar till a halfe part be conſumed, and waſh all the gums therewith; but if they be looſe, then onely rub them with the leaves of *Elicampane* or *Horſehelue*, after they have beene let blood, and it will faſten them.

Chap. XLV.

Of the Cricke in the necke.

FOr the Crick in the neck, you ſhall firſt chafe it with the Friction before ſpecified, and then annoint and bathe

bathe it with Sope and Vinegar, boyled together.

Chap. XLVI.

Of the falling of the Creſt, mangines in the Maine, or ſhedding of the haire.

ALL theſe diſeaſes proceed from poverty, miſlike, or over-riding, and the beſt cure of the falling of the Creſt, is blood-letting and proud keeping, with ſtore of meate, for ſtrength and fatnes ever will raiſe up the Creſt, but if the Maine be mangie, you ſhall anoint it with Butter and Brimſtone, and if the haire fall away, then take *Soth-wood*, and burne it to aſhes, then take thoſe aſhes, and mixing them with common oile, annoint the place therewith, and it will bring haire preſently, ſmooth, thicke and faire.

Chap. XLVII.

Of paine in the Withers.

A Horſes Withers are ſubject to many griefes and ſwellings, which proceed from cold humours, ſometimes from evill ſaddles, therefore if at any time you finde any ſwelling about them, you ſhall take the herb *Horſe tongue*, and boile it with the oile of *Roſes*, and very hot apply it to the ſore, and it will aſſwage it, or elſe breake it, and heale it.

Chap. XLVIII.

Of ſwaying the Backe, or weakneſſe in the Backe.

THeſe two infirmities are dangerous, and may be eaſed, but never abſolutely cured, therefore where you finde them, take *Fenſwort*, and boile them in oile, and mixing them in a little Beane-meale, charge the Backe, and it will ſtrengthen it.

Chap.

Chap. XLIX.

Of the Itch in the taile, or of the generall Rub and mangineſſe, or of the Farcie.

FOr any of theſe diſeaſes, take freſh greaſe, and yellow *Arſnicke*, mix them together, and where the Mangineſſe or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the ſore being made raw: but if it be for Farcie, then with a Knife ſlit all the knots, both hard and ſoft, and then rub in the medicine: which done, tie up the Horſe, ſo as he may not come to bite himſelfe, and then after he hath ſtood two or three houres, take old piſſe and ſalt boiled together, and with it waſh away the ointment, and then put the Horſe to meat; doe thus two or three daies together, provided alwaies, that you firſt let him blood, and take good ſtore from him, and alſo give him every morning a ſtrong ſcouring, or a ſtrong purge, both which are ſhewed before.

Chap. L.

Of any halting which commeth by ſtraine, or ſtroke, either before or behind, from the ſhoulder or ſlip downe to the Hoofe.

THere be many infirmities which make a horſe halt, as pinching the ſhoulder, wrench in the ſhoulder, wrench in the neather joynt, ſplatting the ſhoulder, ſhoulder pight, ſtraines in joints, and ſuch like: all which, ſince they happen by one accident, as namely, by the violence of ſome ſlip or ſtraine, they may be cured by one medicine, and it is thus. After you have found where the griefe is, as you may doe by griping and pinching every ſeverall member, then where he moſt complaineth, there is his moſt griefe. You ſhall take (if the ſtraine be new) *Vinegar, Bolearmoniake*, the whites of Eggs and beane-

flower,

flower, and having beaten them to a perfect salve, lay them very hot to the sore place, and it will cure it: but if the straine be old, then take Vinegar and Butter, and melting them together with Wheat-bran, make it into a pultis, and lay it to the sore as hot as may be, and it will without doubt, take away the griefe.

Chap. LI.

Of foundring in the feete.

OF foundring, there be two sorts, a dry and a wet: the drie foundring is incurable, the wet is thus to be helpt: First pare all the soles of his feet so thin, that you may see the quicke, then let him blood at every toe, and let them bleed well, then stop the veine with *Tallow* and *Rosen*, and having tackt hollow shooes on his feete, stop them with *Bran*, *Tarre*, and *Tallow*, as boiling hot as may be, and renue it once in two daies, for a weeke together, then exercise him much, and his feete will come to their true use and nimblenesse.

The cure.

Chap. LII.

Of the Splent, Curbe, Bowe-spaven, or any knoble or bony excression, or ring-bone.

A Splent is a bony excression under the knee or the fore legge, the Curbe is the like behind the hinder hough, the Spavine is the like on the inside of the hinder hough, and the Ring-bone is the like on the croner of the hoofe. And the cure is, first upon the top of the excression, make a slit with your knife the length of a Barly-corne, or a little more, and then with a fine corner, raise the skin from the bone, and having made it hollow the compasse of the excression, and no more: take a little lint, and dip it into the alle of *Origanum*, and thrust it into the

The cure.

the hole, and cover the knob, and so let it bride till you see it rot, and that Nature casteth out both the medicine and the core. As for the Ring-bone you shall neede to scarifie and annoint it with the olle onely.

CHAP. LIII.

Of the Mallander, Selander, Paines, Scratches, Mellet, Mules, Crowne scabs, and such like.

FOr any of these Sorrances, you shall take Verdigrease, and soft grease, and grinding them together, to an ointment, put it to a boxe by it selfe: then take Wax, Hogs-grease, and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put that salve into another boxe: then when you come to dresse the sore, after you have taken off the scab and made it raw, you shall annoint it with your greene salve of Verdigrease and fresh grease onely for two or three daies; it is a sharp salve, and will kill the cankerous humour; then when you see the sore looke faire, you shall take two parts of the yellow salve, and one part of the greene salve, and mixing them together, annoint the sore therewith till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker, as you shall finde occasion.

CHAP. LIIII.

Of an upper Attaint, or nether Attaint, or any hurt by over-reaching.

THese Attaints are strokes or cuts by over-reaching, either on the backe sinew of the fore-legge, on the heeles or nether joynts, and may be safely healed by the same former medicine and meane which healeth the *Mallander*, or *Selander*, in the former *Chapter*, onely for your over-reaches, you shall before you apply your salve, lay the sore plaine and open, without hollowneese, and

wash it with Beere and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt.

Chap. LV.

Of the infirmities of hooses as false quarters, loose hooses, casting hooses, hoof-bound, hoose-running, hoose-brittle, hoose-hurt, hoose-soft, hoose-hard, or generally to preserve hooses.

THe hoose is subject to many miseries: as first, to false quarters, which commeth by pricking, and must be help'd by good shooing, where the shooe must beare on every part of the foot, but upon the false quarters only. If the hoose be loose, annoint it with pitch of *Burgundy*, and it will knit it: if it be cleane cast off, then pitch of *Burgundy* and *Tallow* molten together, will bring a new: if it be bound or straitned, it must be very well opened at the heels, the soale kept moist, and the cronet annointed with the fat of *Bacon* and *Terre*. If the frush of the feet run with stinking matter, it must be stopt with *Soote*, *Turpentine*, and *Bolearmeniake* mix'd together: if it be brittle or broken, then annoint it with *Pitch* and *Linseed-oile* molten to a soft salve; if it be soft, then stop it with *Sope*, and the *ashes* of a burn'd *Felt* mixt together: if the hooses be hard, lay hot burning *Cinders* upon them, and then stop them with *Tow* and *Tallow*: and generally for the preserving of all good hooses, annoint them daily with the *Sward* or *Rinde* of fat *Bacon*.

Chap. LVI.

Of the blood spaven, or hough bony, or any other unnaturall swelling, from what cause soever it proceedeth.

THese two sorrances are Pustels, or soft round swellings, the first on the inside of the hinder hough, and the other on the very huckle of the hough behind, they are soft and very sore, and the cure is: First, to take up

The cure.

the

the veine above, and let it bleed only from below, then having knit it faſt with two ſhooe-makers ends on both ſides the ſlit, cut the veine in two pieces: then take *Lin-ſeed*, and bruiſe it in a Mortar, then mixe it with *Cow-dung*, and heat it in a Frying pan, and ſo apply it to the ſwelling only, and if it breake and run, then heale it with a plaiſter of *Pitch*, and the horſe ſhall never be troubled with *Spaves* more: but if the ſwelling come by ſtraine or bruiſe, then take *Patch-greaſe*, and melting it, annoint the ſore therewith, holding a hot iron neere it to ſinke in the *greaſe*, then fold a linnen cloth about it, and it will aſſwage all ſwellings whatſoever.

Chap. LVII.

Of Wind-Galls.

THeſe are little blebs, or ſoft ſwellings on each ſide the Fetlocke, procured by much travell on hard and ſtony waies. The cure is to pricke them, and to let out the jelly, and then dry up the ſore with a plaiſter of *Pitch*. The cure.

Chap. LVIII.

Of enterfairing or Shackle-gall, or any gallings.

ENterfairing, is hewing one leg on another, and ſtriking off the skin: it proceedeth from weakneſſe or ſtraightneſſe of the horſes pace, and Shackell-gall is any gall underneath the Fetlocke. The cure is, to annoint them with *Turpentine* and *Verdigreaſe* mix'd together, or *Turpentine* alone, if it rankle not too much. The cure.

Chap. LIX.

Hurts on the Cronet, as the quittorbone, or Matlong.

THe Quittorbone is a hollow ulcer on the top of the Cronet, and ſo is the Matlong, and the cure is: Firſt,

so taine it with Verdigreace until you have eaten out the core, and made the wound very cleane; then you shall heale it up with the same salves, that you heale the Scratches.

The Cure.

CHAP. LX.

Of wounds in the foote: as prevelling, pricking, figge, retrait, or claying.

If your horse have any wound in his foot, by what mischance soever, you shall first search his, and see that it be cleare of any nailes point, or other splenter to annoy it; then wash it very well with white Wine and Salt, and after taint it with the ointment called *Egyptiacum*, and then lay hot upon the taint, with *Flaxe* hurds, *Turpentine*, *Oile*, and *waxe* mingled together, and annoint all the top of the hoofe and cronet with *Bolarmoniak* and *Vinegar*: doe this once a day until the sore be whole.

CHAP. LXI.

To draw out a Stub or Thorne.

TAke the herbe *Dittany*, and bruise it in a Mortar with blacke Soape, and lay it to the sore, and it will draw out the splenter, stub, thorne, or nayle.

CHAP. LXII.

Of the Auburie or Tetter.

The Auburie is a roughy scurfe on any part of the horses body, and the Tetter is a chancrous sore like it. The cure of both is with an hot iron, to seare the one plaine to the body, and to scarifie the other; then take the juyce of *Plantane*, and mix it with *Vinegar*, *Honey*, and the ponder

The cure,

Chap. LXIII.

Of the Cords or string-halt.

THis is an unnaturall binding of the sinewes; which imperfection, a horse bringeth with him into the World with him: and therefore it is certaine, it is incurable, and not painfull, but onely an eye-sore, yet the best way to keep it from worse inconvenience, is to bathe his limbes in the decoction of *Colworts*.

Chap. LXIIII.

Of Spur-galling, or fretting the skin and haire.

FOr this, there is nothing better than Pisse and Salt, with which wash the sore daily.

Chap. LXV.

Of healing any old Sore or Wound.

FResh Butter, and the herbe *Amees* chopt and beaten together to a salve will heale any wound, or any old sore.

Chap. LXVI.

Of sinewes being cut.

IF the Horses sinewes be cut, take the leaves of wilde *Nepe* or *Woodbine*, and beating them in a Mortar with *May-butter*, apply it to the sore, and it will knit the sinewes.

Chap. LXVII.

Of eating away dead flesh.

TAke *Stubwort*, and lap it in a red Docke leafe, and roste it in the hot cinders, and lay it to the sore and it will eate away any dead flesh. So will *Verdigrease*, burnt *Allome*, or *Lime*. The cure.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of Knots in the joynts.

PAtch-greaſe applyed as is before ſhewed for ſwellings, will take away any hard knots in the fleſh, or upon the ſinewes.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of venemous wounds: as biting with a mad Dog, ſtukes of Bores, Serpents, or ſuch like.

FOr any of theſe mortall or venemous wounds, take *Yarrow*, *Calamint*, and the graines of *Wheat*, and beat them in a Mortar with water of *Southernwood*, and make it into a ſalve, and lay it to the ſore, and it will heale it ſafely.

CHAP. LXX.

Of Lice, or Nits.

THis filthineſſe of Vermine is bred in a horſe through unnaturall diſlike and poverty: The cure is, take the juyce of *Beets* and *Stavesaker* beaten together, and with it anoint the horſes body over, and it will make him cleane.

The cure.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of defending a horſe from Flies.

TAke the juyce of *Pellitory of Spaine*, and mixing it with milke, anoint the horſes belly therewith, and no Flies will trouble him.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of broken bones, or bones out of joynt.

AFter you have placed the bones in their true places, take the *Ferne of wood*, and beat it in a Mortar with the oile of *Swallowes*, and anoint all the member, then ſplent it and roll it up, and in fifteene daies, the bones will knit and be ſtrong.

CHAP.

Chap. LXXIII.

Of drying up ſores when they be almoſt whole.

ALlome burn'd, unſleek'd Lime, the aſhes of an old ſhooe-ſole burn'd, or Oiſter-ſhels burn'd, any of theſe ſimply by themſelves, will dry up any ſore, though never ſo moiſt.

Chap. LXXIIII.

A moſt famous Receit to make a Horſe that is leane, and full of inward ſickneſſe ſound and fat in fourteene daies, having beene often approved of.

TAke of *Wheate-meale* ſix pound, *Aniſeeds* two ounces, *Cummin-ſeedes* ſix drams, *Carthamus* one dram and a halfe, *Fennegreeke-ſeedes* one ounce two drammes, *Brimſtone* one ounce and a halfe, *Sallet-oile* one pint, *Honey* one pound and a halfe, white *Wine* foure pints: this muſt be made into paſte, the hard ſimples being pounded into powder, and finely ſearſt, and then kneaded together, and ſo made into balls as big as a mans fiſt, then every watering conſume one of thoſe balls into his cold water, which he drinketh for morning and evening for fifteene daies together, and if at the firſt he be dainty to drinke the Water, yet care not, but let him faſt till he drinke it, and after he beginnes to take it, he will drinke it with great greedineſſe.

Chap. LXXV.

How to make a white Starre.

SLit the horſes fore-head, the length of your Starre, and then raiſe the ſkinne up with a cornet, and put in a plate of Leade as bigge as the Starre, and let it remaine ſo two or three daies together, and then let out and preſſe downe the skin with your hand, and the haire will

will fall away, and white will come in the place: or to ſcald the face or skinne with a ſower Apple roſted, will bring white haire: But to make a blacke ſtarre, or a red ſtarre in a horſes fore-head, I referre it for you to looke and approve of in my *Maſter-peece*, which belongeth only to that for to be ſo exactly diſcourſed of, this being only a generall cure of all Cattell.

The end of the Horſe.

The generall cure and ordering of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe.

CHAP. I.

Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe or Oxe, their ſhape, breed, uſe, choiſe, and preſervation.

FOr as much as the Male of all creatures are the principall in the breed and generation of things, and that the fruit which iſſueth from their ſeed, participateth moſt with their outward ſhapes and inward qualities, I thinke fitteſt in this place, where I intend to treat of horned Cattell and Neate, to ſpeake firſt of the choice of a faire Bull, being the breeders principalleſt inſtrument of profit. You ſhall underſtand then, that of our *Engliſh* Cattell (for I will not ſpeake of thoſe in *Italy* and other forraigne countries, as other Authors doe, and forget mine owne) the beſt are bred in *Yorkſhire*, *Derbyſhire*, *Lancaſhire*, *Staffordſhire*, *Lincolneſhire*, *Gloſterſhire*, and *Somerſetſhire*, though they which are bred in *Yorkſhire*, *Derbyſhire*, *Lancaſhire*, and *Staffordſhire*, are generally all blacke

The Countries for breed.

blacke of colour, and though they whose blacknesse is pureſt, and their haires like Velvet, are eſteemed beſt; they have exceeding large hornes, and very white, with blacke tips; they are of ſtately ſhape, bigge, round, and well buckled together in every member, ſhort joynted, and moſt comely to the eye, ſo that they are eſteemed excellent in the Market: thoſe in *Lincolne-ſhire* are the moſt part Pide with more white, than other colours, their hornes little and crooked, of bodies exceeding tall, long and large, leane and thin thigh'd, ſtrong hoofed, not apt to ſurbait, and are indeed fitteſt for labour and draught. Thoſe in *Somerſet-ſhire* and *Glocter-ſhire*, are generally of a blood red colour, in all ſhapes like unto thoſe in *Lincolne-ſhire*, and fitteſt for their uſes. Now to mixe a race of theſe and the blacke ones together, is not good, for their ſhapes and colours are ſo contrary, that their iſſue are very uncomely; therefore I would wiſh all men to make their breeds either ſimply from one and the ſame kinde, or elſe to mixe *Yorke-ſhire* with *Staffordſhire*, with *Lancaſhire*, or *Derby-ſhire* with one of the blacke races, and ſo likewiſe *Lincolne-ſhire* with *Somerſet-ſhire*, or *Somerſet-ſhire* with *Glocter ſhire*.

Of not mixing, and mixing of races.

Now for the ſhape of your Bull, hee would be of a ſharp and quicke countenance, his hornes the larger the better, the neck fleſhie, his belly long and large, his forehead broad and curled, his eyes blacke and large, his eares rough within, and haire like Velvet, his muzell large and broad as his upper lip but narrow and ſmall at the neather, his noſtrill crooked within, yet wide and open, his dew-lap extending from his neather lip downe to his fore-hoothes, large, ſide, thin and hairy, his breaſt rough and bigge, his ſhoulders large, broad and deepe, his ribs broad and wide, his backe ſtreight and flat, even to the

The ſhape of the Bull.

ſetting

ſetting on of his taile, which would ſtand high, his huckle-bones round and faire appearing, making his buttocks ſquare, his thighs round, his legs ſtreight and ſhort joynted; his knees round and big, his hooſes or clawes long and hollow, his taile long, and buſh-hair'd, and his pyzell round, and alſo well hair'd. The uſe of the Bull. These Buls as they are for breed, ſo they are excellently good for the draught, only they naturally draw better ſingle, like horſes, than in the yoake, like Oxen: the reaſon, as I ſuppoſe, being, becauſe they can hardly be match'd in an equall manner.

Of the Cow, and her ſhape. Now for the Cow, you ſhall chooſe her of the ſame country with your Bull, and as neere as may be of one colour, onely her Bag or Udder would ever be white, with foure Teats, and no more, her belly would be round and large, her fore-head broad and ſmooth, and all her other parts ſuch as are before ſhewed in the Male kind.

Of her uſe. The uſe of the Cow is two-fold, either for the Dary, or for breed: The red Cow giveth the beſt milke, and the blacke Cow bringeth forth the goodlieſt Calfes. The young Cow is the beſt for breed, yet the indifferent old are not to be refuſed. That Cow which giveth milke longeſt is beſt for both purpoſes, for ſhe which goes long drie, looſeth halfe her profit, and is leſſe fit for breeding: for commonly they are ſubject to feed, and that ſtraitneth the wombe or matrix.

Of Calves and their nouriſhing. Now for Calves, there are two waies of breeding them: the one to let them run with their Dams all the yeere, which is beſt, and maketh the goodlieſt beaſt: the other, to take them from their Dams, after their firſt ſucking, and ſo bring them up on the finger, with ſkorten milke, the cold onely being taken away, and no more, for to give a young Calfe hot milke is preſent death, or very dangerous. If your Calfe be calved in the fwe daies after

Obſervations.

the

the change, which is called the *Prime*, doe not reare it, for most assuredly it will have the Sturdy, therefore preserve it onely for the Butcher; also when you have preserved those male Calves, which shall be Bulls, then geld the rest for Oxen, and the younger they are gelt the better. The best time for rearing of Calves, is from *Michaelmas* till *Candlemas*. A Calfe would be nourished with milke twelve weekes, only a fortnight before you weane it from milke, let the milke be mixed with water. After your Calfe hath drunke one moneth: you shall take the finest, sweetest, and softest Hay you can get, and putting little wispes into cloven sticks, place them so as the Calfe may come to them, and learne to eate Hay. After our *Ladies*-day when the weather is faire, you may turne your Calves to grasse, but by no meanes let it be ranke, but short and sweet, so that they may get it with some labour.

Now of the Oxe: You shall understand, that the largest are the best and most profitable, both for draught or feeding: for he is the strongest to indure labour, and best able to containe both flesh and tallow. Now for his shape, it differeth nothing from that of the Bull, only his face would be smooth, and his belly deeper. That Oxe is fittest for the yoake, which is of gentlest nature, and most familiar with the man. In matching your Oxen for the yoake, let them as neere as may be be of one height, spirit, and strength, for the stronger will ever wrong the weaker, and the duller will injure him that is of free spirit, except the driver be carefull to keepe the dull Oxe to his labour. Oxen for the yoake, would by no meanes be put beyond their ordinary pace: for violence in travell heats them, heat breeds surfeit, and surfeit those diseases which makes them unapt to feed, or for any other use of goodnesse. Of the Oxe, and his use.

Of his Foode for labour.

goodneſſe. Your Oxe for the yoake will labour well with Barley-ſtraw, or Peaſe-ſtraw, and for blend fodder, which is Hay and Straw mixt together, hee will deſire no better feeding.

Oxen to feed for the Butcher.

Now for your Oxe to feede, hee would as much as might be, be ever of luſty and young yeeres, or if old, yet healthful and unbruiſed, which you ſhall know by a good taile, and a good purſell, for if the haire of one or both be loſt, then he is a waſter, and he will be long in feeding. If you doe ſee the Oxe doth licke himſelfe all over, it is a good ſigne that he is Market able, and will feed, for it ſhewes foundneſſe, and then the beaſt taketh a joy in himſelfe; yet whilſt he doth ſo licke himſelfe he feedeth not, for his owne pride hindreth him, and therefore the husband man will lay the Oxes owne dung upon his hide, which will make him leave licking, and fall to his food. Now if you goe to chooſe a fat beaſt, you ſhall handle his hindmoſt rib, and if it be ſoft and looſe, like Downe, then it ſhewes the Oxe is outwardly well fed, ſo doth ſoft huckle bones, and a big nach, round and knotty; if his cod be big and full, it ſhewes he is well tallowed, and ſo doth the crop behind the ſhoulders: If it be a Cow, then handle her navell, and if that be big, round, and ſoft, ſurely ſhee is well tallowed. Many other obſervations there are, but they be ſo well knowne, and cõmon in every mans uſe, that they need no curious demonſtration.

To preſerve Cattell in health.

Now for the preſervation of theſe Cattell in good and perfect health, It ſhall be meet that for the young, and luſty, and indeede generally for all ſorts, except Calves, to let them blood twice in the yeere, namely, the Spring and Fall, the Moone being in any of the lower Signes, and alſo to give them to drinke of the pickle of *olives* mixed with the head of *Garlick* bruiſed therein. And

for

for your Calves, be onely carefull that they goe not too soone to grasse, and small danger is to be feared. Now notwithstanding all a mans carefulnesse, beasts daily doe get infirmities, and often fall into mortall extremities, peruse therefore these Chapters following, and you shall finde cure for every particular disease.

CHAP. II.

Of the Feaver de Catell.

CAttell are most subject unto a Feaver, and it commeth either from superfluous blood, being raw & mouldy, or from fume of cold humours ingendred by cold keeping. The signes are trembling, heavy eyes, a foaming mouth, and much groning: and the cure is, first you shall let him blood, and then give him to drinke a quart of Ale, in which is boiled three or foure roots of *Filipendula*, and two spoonfulls of the best *London Treacle*, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water. The cure.

CHAP. III.

Of any inward sicknesse or drooping in Cattell.

FOr any inward sicknesse or drooping in Cattell, take a quart of strong Ale, and boile it with a handfull of *Wormwood*, and halfe a handfull of *Rew*, chew them well, and adde to it two spoonfuls of the juyce of *Garlicke*, and as much of the juyce of *Housleeke*, and as much *London-Treacle*, and give it the beast to drinke, being no more but luke warme.

CHAP. IIII.

Of all the diseases in the head, as the Sturdy, or vertigo cattell.

THis disease of the Sturdy is known by a continuall drawing a bout of the beast in one place, and the cure is, to cast the beast, and having an Ale-knife ready, cut the upper part of his forehead crosse-wise, about foure inches The Cure.

inches each way, then turning up the skin, and laying the skull bare, cut a piece out of the skull two inches square, or more: then looke, and next unto the panicle of the braine, you shall see a bladder lie full of water and blood, which you shall very gently take out, and throw away, then annoint the place with warme fresh Butter, and tirnie downe the skin, and with a needle and a little red silke, stitch it close together, then lay on a hot plaister of Oile, Turpentine, Waxe, and a little Rozen melted together with Flaxe buds, and so folding warme woollen clothes about the head, let the Beast rise, and so remaine three or foure dales ere you dresse it againe, and then heale it up like another wound, onely observe in this cure, by no meanes you touch the braine, for that is mortall, and then the helpe is both common, and mollefie.

Chap. V.

Of diseases in the eyes of Cattell, as the Haw, a stroke, inflammation, weeping, or the Pin or Web.

For any generall soreneſſe in the eyes of Cattell, take the water of *Eye-bright*, mixe with the juyce of *Houſe-leeke*, and waſh them therewith, and it will recover them: but if a Haw breed therein, then you ſhall cut it out, which every ſimple Smith can doe. But for a ſtroke, inflammation, Pin or Web, which breeds excreſſions upon the eyes: take a new laid Egge, and put out halfe the white, then fill it up with Salt, and a little Ginger, and roaſt it extreme hard in hot cinders: which done, beat it to ponder, ſhell and all; but before you roaſt it, wrap it in a wet cloth, and put of this pouder into the beaſts eye, and it will heale and cure it.

Chap.

Chap. VI.

Of diseases in the mouth: as Barbs under the tongue, Blaine on the tongue, teeth loose, or tongue venomed.

THese Barbs or Paps which grow under the tongues of Cattel, and being inflamed, do hinder them from feeding, you shall with a keene paire of shears cut away close by the flesh, and if they bleed much (as they will doe if they be ranke) you shall then with a red hot bodkin seare them, and drop on the top of the seared places a drop or two of Rozen and Butter mix'd together; but if they bleed not, then only rub them with Sage and Salt, and they will heale. Now for the Blaine on the tongue, of some called the Tin-blaine, it is a blister which groweth at the roots of the tongue, and commeth through heat of the stomach, and much chasing, and is of a very mortall, for it will rise so suddenly and so bigge, that it will stop the wind of the Beast. The cure is to thrust your hand into the mouth of the Beast, and drawing out his tongue, with your naile to breake the blister, and then to wash the sore place with strong brine, or Sage, Salt, and Water: if you find more blisters than one, breake them all, and wash them, and it is a present cure. Now for loose teeth, you shal let the beast blood in his gums, and under his taile, then wash his chaps, with Sage and Woodbine leaves, boil'd in brine: Lastly, if the tongue be venomed, which you shall know by the unnaturall swelling therof: you shall take Plantaine, and boiling it with Vinegar and Salt, wash the tongue therewith, and it will cure it. The cure.

Chap. VII.

Of diseases in the necke, as being galled, bruised, swolne, out of joynt, or having the Closse.

IF any Oxes necke be galled, bruised, or swollen with the yoake, take the leaves of round *Aristolochia*, and beating

cing them in a Mortar, with Tallow, or fresh Greafe, anoint the fore place therewith, and it will not only heale it but any ſtraine in the neck, even if the bone be a little diſordered. Now for the *Cloſe* or *cloſſe*, which cauſeth a beaſt to pill and looſe the haire from his necke, and is bred by drawing in wet and rainy weather: you ſhall take the aſhes of an old burn'd ſhooe, and ſtrew it upon the necke, and then rub it over with *Oyle* and *Turpentine* mixt together.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Peſtilence, Gargil, or Murraine in Beaſts.

THe Peſtilence or Murraine amongſt Beaſts, is bred by divers occaſions, as from rankneſſe of blood or feeding, from corruption of the aire, intemperateneſſe of the weather, inundation of floods, or the infection of other *Cattell*. much might be ſaid of the violence and mortality thereof, which hath lately unfurniſhed whole *Countries*: but to goe to the cure, you ſhall give to all your *Cattell*, as well the ſound as ſicke, this medicine, which never failed to preſerve as many as have taken it: Take of old Urine a quart, and unite it with a handfull of Hens dung diſſolv'd therein, and let your beaſt drinke it.

The cure.

CHAP. IX.

Of the miſliking or leanneſſe of Beaſts.

IF your Beaſt fall into any unnaturall miſlike or leanneſſe, which you ſhall know by the diſcolouring of his haire; you ſhall then cauſe him firſt to be let blood, and after take ſweet Butter, and beat it in a Mortar, with a little *Myrrhe*, and the ſhaving of *Ivory*, and being kept faſting, make him to ſwallow downe two or three balls therof: and if it be in the winter, feed him with ſweete Hay, if in the Summer, put him to graſſe.

CHAP.

Chap. X.

Of the disease in the Guts: as Fluxe, Costiuenesse, Cholicke, and such like.

IF your beast be troubled with any sore Laxe, or Bloody-fluxe, you shall take a handfull of the seeds of *Wood-rose*, and being dried and beaten to powder, brew it with a quart of strong *Ale*, and give it the beast to drink. But if he be too dry or costiue in his body, then you shall take a handfull of *Fennegreeke*, and boile it in a quart of *Ale*, and give it him to drinke, but for any cholicke or belly-ake, or gnawing of the guts, boile in the water which hee drinketh good store of oile, and it will helpe him.

Chap. XI.

Of pissing of blood.

IF your beast pisse blood, which commeth either of over-labouring, or of hard and sower feeding, you shall take *Shepherds-purse*, and boile it in a quart of red *Wine*, and then straine it, and put to it a little *Cynamon*, and so give it the beast to drinke.

Chap. XII.

Of dropping nostrills, or any cold in the head.

IF your beasts nostrills run continually, which is a signe of cold in the head; you shall take *Butter* and *Brimstone*, and mixing them together, annoint two *Goose-feathers* therewith, and thrust them up into the nostrills of the beast: and use thus to doe every morning till they leave dropping.

Chap. XIII.

Of any swelling in a beast whatsoever.

IF your beast have any outward swelling, bathe it with *Oile* and *Vineger* exceeding hot, and it will asswage it;

but if the ſwelling be inward, then boile round *Ariſtolochia* in his water.

Chap. XIIII.

Of the worme in the taile.

THere is a worme which will breede in the taile of a beaſt, and doth not onely keepe him from feeding, but alſo eareth away the haire of the taile, and diſfigureth the beaſt. The cure is, to waſh the taile in ſtrong Lye, made of *Vrine* and *Aſh-wood-aſhes*, and that will kill the worme, and alſo heale and dry up the ſore.

The Cure.

Chap. XV.

Of any cough, or ſhortneſſe of breath in Cattell.

IF your beaſt be troubled with the cough, or ſhortneſſe of breath, you ſhall give him to drink divers mornings together, a ſpoonfull or two of *Terre* diſſolv'd in a quart of new *Milke*, and a head of *Garlick* cleane pild & bruiſed.

Chap. XVI.

Of any Impoſtume, Bile, or Botch in a Beaſt.

IF your beaſt be troubled with any Impoſtume, Bile, or Botch, you ſhall take *Lilly* roots, and boile them in *Milke* till they be ſoft, ſo that you may make them like pap, then being very hot, clap it to the ſore, and then when it comes to be ſoft, open it with a hot iron, and let out the filth, then heale it up with *Terre*, *Turpentine*, and *Oyle* mix'd together.

Chap. XVII.

Of diſeaſes in the ſinewes: as weakneſſe, ſtiffneſſe, or ſorenneſſe.

IF you find by the unnimble going of your beaſt, that his ſinewes are weake, ſhrunke or tender: Take *Mallowes* and *Cheekweed*, and boile them in the dregges of *Ale*, or in *Vineger*, and being very hot, lay it to the offended

offended member, and it will comfort the sinewes.

Chap. XVIII.

Of the generall Scab, particular Scab, Itch, or Scurfe in Cattell.

If your beast be troubled with some few scabs, here and there on his body, you shall only rub them off, and annoint the place with blacke *Sope* and *Tarre* mix'd together, and it will heale them. But if the scab be universall over the body, and the scabs mix'd with a dry scurfe, then you shall first let the beast blood, after rub off the scabs and scurfe till the skin bleed, then wash it with old *Urine* and greene *Copperas* together, and after the bathing is dry, anoint the body with *Beare-grease* and *Brimstone* mingled together.

Chap. XIX.

Of the hide bound, or dry skin in Cattell.

THis griefe commeth of over-much labour and evill keeping, and above all other beasts your *Lincolne-shire* Oxen are subject unto it, the signes are a discolored and hard skin, with much leanneſſe: The cure is, to let him blood, and to give him to drinke a quart of good strong *Ale* brewed with *Myrrhe* and the powder of *Bay-berries*, or for want of *Berries*, the *Bay-tree leaves*, and then keepe him warme, and feed him with Hay that is a little Mow-burn'd, and only looketh red, but is not dusty or moldy, for that will get him an appetite to drinke, and drinking will looſen his skin. The cure.

Chap. XX.

Of the diseases in the Lungs, especially the Lung-growne.

THe Lungs of a beast are much subject to sickneſſe, as may appeare by much panting, and shortneſſe of breath, the signes being a continuall coughing, but that

which is before prescribed for the Cough, will cure all these, onely for a beast which is Lung-growne, or hath his lungs growne to his side, which commeth through some extreme drought taken in the Summer season, and is knowne by the cough, hoarse, or hollow coughing, you shall take a pinte of *Quicke Oile*, and mixe it with a pinte of new milke, and one ounce of browne *Sugar-candy*, and give it the Beast to drinke, this hath beene found a present cure. Or to give him a ballas bigger then a mans fist of Tarre and Butter mixt together, is a very certaine cure.

CHAP. XXI.

Of biting with a mad dog, or of any other venemous beast.

IF your Beast bee bitten with a mad dogge, or any other venemous Beast, you shall take *Plantaine*, and beate it in a morter with *Bolearmoniack*, *Sanguis draconis*, Barley meale, and the whites of Egges, and plaister wise lay it unto the sore, renewing it once in foure seuene houres.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the falling downe of the pallate of a beasts mouth.

LAbour and drought will take the pallate of a Beasts mouth to fall downe, which you shall know by a certaine hollow chanking in his mouth, when he would eate, also by his sighing, and a desire to eate but cannot. The ordinary cure is, you shall cast the Beast, and with your hand thrust it up, then let him bloud in the pallate, and annoynt it with hony and salt, and then put him to grasse, for he may eate no dry meate.

CHAP.

Chap. XXIII.

Of any griefe or paine in the hoofe of a beast, and of the Foule.

TAke *Mugwort*, and beat it in a Mortar with hard *Tallow*, and apply it to the hoofe of the Beast, and it will take away any griefe whatsoever. But if he be troubled with that disease which is called the *Foule*, and commeth most commonly by treading in mans ordure, breedeth a soreneſſe and swelling betweene the cleyes, you shall for the cure, cast the beast, and with a Hay-Rope rub him so hard betweene the same, that you make him bleed, then anoint the place with *Tarre*, *Turpentine*, and *Kitching-fee*, mixt together, and keepe him out of the dirt, and he will soone be whole. The cure.

Chap. XXIIII.

Of bruisings in generall, on what part of the body soever they be.

TAke *Brookelime* the leſſe, and frie it with *Tallow*, and so hot lay it to the bruise, and it will either expell it, or else ripen it, breake it, and heale it, as hath beene often approved.

Chap. XXV.

Of swallowing downe Hens-dung, or any poisonous thing.

IF your beast have swallowed down Hens-dung, Horseleeches, or any other poisonous thing, you shall take a pint of strong *Vineger*, and halfe so much *Oile*, or sweete *Butter*, and two spoonfulls of *London-Treacle*, and mixing them together on the fire, give it the beast warme to drinke, and it will cure him.

Chap. XXVI.

Of killing Lice or Tickes.

BEasts that are bred in Woods under droppings of trees, or in barren and unwholesome places are much

subject to Lice, Tickes, and other Vermine. The cure
The cure. whereof is to anoint their body with fresh *Grease*, *Pepper*, *Staveſaker*, and *Quickſilver*, beaten together untill the *Quickſilver* be ſlaine.

Chap. XXVII.

Of the Dewbolne, or generall Gargill.

HOwſoever ſome of our *Engliſh* Writers are opinioned, this *Dewbolne*, or generall *Gargill* is a poiſonous and violent ſwelling, beginning at the neather part of the *Dewlap*, and if it be not prevented, the ſwelling will aſcend upward to the throat of the beaſt, and then it is incurable: therefore for the preſervation of your beaſt, as ſoone as you ſee the ſwelling appeare, caſt the beaſt, and ſlit the ſwell'd place of the *Dewlap* at leaſt foure inches in length; then take a handfull or two of *Speare-graſſe*, or *Rats-graſſe*, and thruſting it into the wound, ſtitch it up cloſe, then anoint it with *Butter* and *Salt*, and ſo let it rot and weare away of it ſelfe: if you perceive that his body be ſwell'd, which is a ſigne that the poiſon is diſpers'd inwardly, then it ſhall be good to give him a quart of *Ale* and *Rew* boil'd togeather, and to chafe him up and downe well, both before and after.

Chap. XXVIII.

Of the loſſe of the Cud.

A Beaſt will many times through careleſneſſe in chewing, loſe his Cud, and then mourne and leave to eat: The cure. The certaine cure wherof is, to take a little ſowre *Leaven* and *Salt*, and beating it in a Mortar with mans *Vrine* and *Lowe*, make a pretty bigge ball, and force him to ſwallow it downe, and it will recover his Cud.

Cha.

Chap. XXIX.

Of killing of all sorts of wormes either in the Oxe, Cow, or Calfe.

THere is nothing killeth Wormes in the bodies of cattell sooner than *Sope* chop'd small and beaten with sweet *Butter*, and so given in round balls to the beast, nor any thing maketh them volde them so soone as sweete *Wort*, and a little blacke *Sope* mixt together, and given the Beast to drinke. The cure.

Chap. XXX.

Of the vomiting of blood.

THis disease commeth through rankenesse of blood, got in fruitfull pastures after hard keeping, insomuch that you shall see the blood flow from their mouthes. The cure is, first to let the beast blood, and then give to drinke *Bolearmoniake* and *Ale*, mixt together.

Chap. XXXI.

Of the Gout in Cattell.

IF your beast be troubled with the Gout, which you shall know by the sudden swelling of his joynts, and falling againe, you shall take *Gallingall*, and boile it in the dregs of *Ale* and sweet *Butter*, and pultis-wise lay it to the offended member.

Chap. XXXII.

Of milting of a Beast.

MIlting, is when a Beast will oft fall, and oft rise, as he is at his labour, and cannot indure to stand any while together: it proceedes from some stroke or bruise either by cudgell or other blunt weapon: And the cure is, not to raise him suddenly, but to give him *Ale* and some stone *Pitch* mixt very well together to drinke. The cure.

Chap. XXXIII.

Of provoking a beast to pisse.

IF your beast cannot pisse, steepe *Swallage*, or the roots of *Raddish* in a quart of *Ale*, and give it him to drinke, and it presently helpeth.

Chap. XXXIIII.

Of the over flowing of the gall in beasts.

THe over-flowing of the Gall, is ever knowne by the yellownesse of the skin and the eyes of the beast: And the cure is, to give him a quart of *Milke*, *Saffron* and *Turmricke* mix'd together, to drinke after he hath beene let blood, and so doe three mornings together.

The cure.

Chap. XXXV.

Of a beast that is gored, either with a stake, or the horne of another beast.

TAke *Turpentine* and *Oile*, and heat them on the coales, and then taint the wound therwith, and it wil heale it.

Chap. XXXVI.

Of a Cow that is whelberd.

THis disease is, when a Cow after her calving cannot cast her cleaning, and therefore to compell her to cast it, you shall take the juyce of *Betony*, *Mugwort*, and *Mallowes*, of each three spoonfulls, and mixe it with a quart of *Ale*, and give it the beast to drinke: and also give her to eate scorched *Barley*, and it will force her to avoid her burthen suddenly.

Chap. XXXVII.

Of drawing out thornes or stubs.

TAke blacke *Snailes* and blacke *Sope*, and beat them to a salve, and apply them to the sore, and it will draw the griefe to be apparant.

Chap.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of purging of Cattell.

THere is nothing doth purge a beast so naturally, as the green weedy grasse which groweth in Orchards under trees; nor any medicine doth purge them better than *Tarre, Butter*, and *Sugar rosaled*, mixt together, and given in balls as big as an Hens egge.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of being shrew-run, or shrew-bitten.

A Shrew Mouse, which is a Mouse with short uneven legs, and a long head like a Swines, is a venemous thing, and if it bite a beast, the sore will swell and rankle, and put the beast in danger, but if it only run over beast, it setteth his hinder parts, and maketh him unable to goe: the cure then for being Shrew-bitten, is the same which is formerly shewed for the biting of other venemous beasts: but if he be Shrew-run, you shall only draw his shoulder, or leg at him with a Bramble, which groweth with both ends in the Furrowes of Corne lands. The cure.

CHAP. XL.

Of faintnesse in labour.

IF your Beast faint in his labour, and that of the day, chance to faint, you shall loose him, and drive him to the running streame to drinke, and then give him a pottle full of parch'd *Barley* to eate, and he will labor fresh again. The Cure.

CHAP. XLI.

Of breeding Milke in a Cow.

IF your Cow after her calving cannot let down her Milke, you shall give her a quart of strong posset-ale, mixt with the *same seeds*, and *Coliander seeds*, beaten to

to powder, to drinke every morning, and it will not onely make her milke spring, but also increase it wonderfully.

CHAP. XLII.

Of bones out of joynt, or bones broken.

IF any beast have a bone broken, or shiver'd, after you have set it right, and in the place did you first wrap a plaister about it, made of *Burgundy-pitch, Tallow,* and *Linseed-olle,* and then splent it, and let it remaine unbound fifteene daies, and it will doe it much good.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the rot in Beasts.

IF your beast be subject to rot, as sheepe, which you may know by his leanenesse, unlikenesse, and loosenesse behinde: you shall take *Myrrhe, Aloes, Sagapen, Bdellium, Incense* and *Feather-fen,* of each good quantity of the *Clay* and *Salt,* mixe these together in strong *Wine,* and being warme, give the beast halfe a pint three mornings, and it will helpe and preserve them.

The cure.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of the Pestilence.

THE *Pestilence* is a very subtile disease, and maketh a beast to sweat, shake, and pant much. The cure is, to give him in *Ale* and *Urine,* mixe together, a little *Grease,* and a little earning to drinke, two or three mornings before you labour him.

The Cure.

CHAP. XLV.

Of all manner of wounds in Beasts.

TO cure any wounds in Beasts given by edge-tooles, or otherwise, where the skinne is broke, take *Hogs-grease, Tarre, Turpentine,* and *Wine,* of each like quantity,

tity, and a quarter so much *Verdigrease*, and melt them all together into one salve, and apply it to the wounde, by spreading it upon a cloth, and it will heale it without any ranke, or dead flesh.

The end of the Bull, Oxe, Cow, and Calfe.

Of Sheepe.

Chap. I.

Of Sheepe in generall, their use, choice, shape, and preservation.

TO enter into any longer discourse of praise or profit of Sheepe, or to shew my Reading by relation of the Sheepe of other Countries more frivolous, because I am to write much in a very little Paper: and I speake onely to my Country-men the *English*, who desire to learne and know their owne profit. Know then, that whosoever will stocke himselfe with good Sheepe, must looke into the nature of the soile in which hee liveth: For Sheepe according to the Earth and Aire in which they live, doe alter their natures and properties: the barren Sheepe becomming good, in good soiles; and the good Sheepe barren in evill soiles. If then you desire to have Sheepe of a curious fine Staple of Wooll, from whence you may draw a threade as fine as silke, you shall

Of the choice of Sheepe.

Of the Leare.

ſmall fee ſuch in *Hereford-ſhire*, about *Lempſter* ſide, and other ſpeciall parts of that Countrey; in that part of *Worſter-ſhire*, joyning upon *Shropſhire*, and many ſuch like places, yet theſe Sheepe are very little of bone, black faced, and beare a very little burthen. The Sheepe upon *Cotſall* hills, are of better bone, ſhape and burthen, but their ſtaple is courſer and deeper. The Sheepe in that part of *Worceſter-ſhire* [illegible] *Warwick-ſhire*, and many parts of *Warwick-ſhire*, all *Leiceſter-ſhire*, *Buckingham-ſhire*, and part of *Northampton-ſhire*; and that part of *Nottingham-ſhire*, which is ſcrupt from the Forreſt of *Sherwood*, beareth a large boned Sheepe, of the beſt ſhape and deepeſt ſtaple; chiefly, if they be Paſture-Sheepe; yet is their Wooll courſer than that of *Cotſall*. *Lincolne-ſhire*, eſpecially in the fals Marſhes, have the largeſt Sheepe, but not the beſt Wooll, for their legges and bellies are long and naked, and their ſtaple is courſer than any other. The Sheepe in *York-ſhire*, and ſo Northward are of reaſonable bigge bone, but of a ſtaple rough and hidrid; and the Welſh Sheepe are of all the worſt, for they are both little, and of worſe ſtaple; and indeed, are praiſed onely in the diſh, for they are the ſweeteſt Mutton.

Of the choice of Sheepe.

If now, knowing the natures and properties of the Sheepe of every Country, you goe about to ſtocke your ground, be ſure to bring your Sheepe from a worſer ſoile to a better, and not from a better to a worſe. The

Of the Leare.

Leare, which is the earth on which a Sheepe lyeth, and giveth him his colour, is much to be reſpected; the red Leare is held the beſt, the duskiſh, inclining to a little redneſſe, is tolerable, but the white or dirty Leare ſtarke naught. In the choice therefore of your Sheepe, chooſe the biggeſt boned, with the beſt wooll, the ſtaple

being

being soft, greasie, well curled, & close together, so that a man shall have much a doe to part it with his fingers. These sheep besides the bearing of the best burthen, are alwaies the best Butchers ware, and goe soonest away in the Market. Therefore, in the choise of Sheepe for your breed, have a principall respect to your Climate, for they ever mare or make a flock: let them then as neere as you can have these properties or shapes. First, large of body in every generall part, with a long body, and a large belly; the forehead would be broad, roman, and well rising; a cheerfull large eye, streight shore nosthrils, and a very small mouth, by no meanes any hornes, for the dodded Sheep is the best breeder, and his flock never danger eth the Damme in yeaning, as the horned sheepe doe: besides, those Sheepe which have no horne, are of such strength of head, that they have oft beene seene to kill those sheepe which have the largest hornes, and best wrinkled: a Sheepe would have a large upright necke, somewhat bending like the neck of a horse, a very broad backe, round buttocks, a thicke taile, and short jointed legs, small, cleane and nimble, his wooll would be thicke, and deepe, covering his belly all over; also his face, and even to his nostrils, and so downwards to his very knees and hinder houghes. And thus according to the shape, properties and colle, from whence you choose your Ramme, choose the rest of your flocke also.

The shape of Sheepe.

Ordering of Lambes.

Necessarie observations.

The best time for your Ewes to bring forth their youngones is, if they be Pasture-sheepe, about the latter end of *April*, and so untill the beginning of *June*; but if they be Field-sheepe, then from the beginning of *January*, till the end of *March*, that their Lambes may be strong and able before *May* day, to follow their Dams over the rough Fallow lands, and wider furrowes, which weake

When Ewes should bring forth.

Lambes

Lambes are not able to doe, and although no yeane shine earely in the Winter, when there is no grasse springing, and the sharpnesse of the weather also be dangerous, yet the Husband-man must provide shelter and sweet fodder, and the Shepherd with great vigilance be stirring at all houres to prevent evills, for the reasons before shewed; and though the Ewe at the first be scant of Milke, yet as the warme weather increaseth, and the grasse beginneth to spring, so will her Milke spring also.

Ordering of Lambes.

Now for your Lambes: about Michaelmas you shall seperate the male from the female; and having chosen out the worthiest, which you meane to keepe for Rams, put them aside, and then geld the rest, whichever cunning Shepherd can doe sufficiently for there is no danger in gelding yong Lambs. The first yeere a male Lamb is called a weather-Hog, and a female Lambe an Ewe-Hog; the second yeere the male is a Weather, and the female a Theafe, and then shee may be putto the Ramme, but if you let her goe over that yeere alone, then shee is a double Theafe, and will both her selfe be the goodlier Sheep and also bring forth the goodlier Lambes; whence it comes, that the best Sheepe-masters make more account of the double Theafe, than of any other breeder.

Needfull observations.

You shall observe never to sheare your Lambes, till they be full Hogs: you shall ever wash three daies before you sheare: the best time of shearing is from *Iune* to *August*. Ewes are ever good breeders from three yeeres old, till their mouths breake. If you would have your Ewes bring forth male Lambes, note when the North-wind bloweth, and driving your Flock against the wind, let your Rammes ride as they goe, and this will make the Ewes to conceive male Lambes: so likewise, if you would have female Lambes, put your Rammes

to

to the Ewes when the wind bloweth out of the South.

Now for the generall preſervation of Sheepe, feede them as much as you can upon high grounds, which are dry and fruitfull, the graſſe ſweet, yet ſo ſhort that it muſt be got with much labour: but if you muſt force perforce feed upon low and moiſt grounds which are infectious, you ſhall not bring your Sheepe from the Fold (for I now ſpeake to the honeſt *Engliſh Husband-man*) untill the Sunne be riſen, and that the beames begin to draw the dew from the earth; then having let them forth, drive them to their place of feede, and there, with your Dog, chaſe them up and downe till they be weary, and then let them either feed or take their reſt, which they pleaſe: this chaſing, firſt, beateth away mill-dewes, and all other dewes from the earth; as alſo thoſe webs, kells, and flakes, which lying on the earth, and a Sheepe licking them up, doe breed rottenneſſe: alſo this chaſing ſtirreth up that naturall heat in a Sheepe, which drinketh up, and waſteth the abundance of moiſture, which elſe would turne to rottenneſſe. Beſides, a Sheepe being thus chaſed and wearied, will fall to his food more deliberately, and not with ſuch greedineſſe as otherwiſe hee would, and alſo make choice of that meate which is beſt for his health. If a Shepherd once in a moneth, or alwaies when he hath occaſion to handle his Sheepe, rub their mouthes with *Bay ſalt*; it is an excellent preſervation againſt all manner of ſickneſſe, and very comfortable for a Sheepe alſo, for a Sheepe will very well live, and abate of his fleſh by rubbing his mouth once a day with *Bay-ſalt* onely. Now for as much as notwithſtanding theſe Principles, a Sheepe falleth into many infirmities, hereafter followeth the ſeverall cures of all manner of diſeaſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The signes to know a sound Sheepe, and an unsound Sheepe.

IF a Sheep be sound and perfect, his eye will be bright and cheerefull, the white pure without spot, and the string red, his gums also will be red, his teeth white and even, his skin on his trisken will be red, and so will each side be neere his body, and his shoulders where Wooll groweth not, his skin in generall will be loose, his Wooll fast, his breech long, and his feet not hot; but if hee be unsound, then these signes will have contrary faces, his eyes will be heavie, pale and spotted, his breast and gums white, his skin yellow and feeble, his Wooll when it is pulled, will easily part from his body, and when hee is dead, open him, and you shall find his belly full of water, his Fat yellow, his Liver putrefied, and his teeth moist and waterish.

CHAP. III.

Of sickenesse in generall, or of the Feaver amongst Sheepe.

CHange of Pasture is a great cure for sicke Sheepe, yet if you find any more particularly troubled than the rest, Take *Rubbe royall*, and stamping it, mixe the juyce with *Wine* and *Vinegar*, the quantity of halfe a pint, and give it the Sheepe with a horne luke-warme, and by no meanes let the Sheep be much chaf'd also in these sicknesses the Shepherd must have a great care to note from whence the disease growes, if it proceed from cold, then to drive his Sheepe to shelter, if from heat, then to feed them in shady and coole places.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the generall Scab or Itch in Sheepe.

THis generall Scab or Itch in Sheepe, is of all diseases the most common among them, proceeding from

rainy

rainy and wet weather, which falling upon their skins, if they happen to be chaft or heated after, they presently breake forth into the scabs, which you shall know by a white filthy scurfe sticking upon their skins: and the most usuall medicine for the same, which all Shepherds use, is to anoint the place with *Tarre*, and *Grease*, mix'd together; but if upon the first appearance of the Itch, you steep *Pellitory-royall* in Water, and wash the skin therewith, it will preserve them from running into the scab.

CHAP. V.

Of killing Maggots in Sheepe.

IF a Sheepe be troubled with Maggots, you shall take *Goose-grease*, *Tarre*, and *Brimstone*, and mixe them together on the fire, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will kill the Maggots.

CHAP. VI.

Of the red Water.

THe red Water is a poisonous disease in Sheepe, offending the heare, and is, indeed, as the pestilence amongst other Cattell: therefore when you find any of your Sheepe infected therewith, you shall first let him blood in the foot, betweene the clawes, and also under the taile, and then lay to the fore places *Rue* or *Wormwood* beaten with *Bay-salt*, and it helpeth.

CHAP. VII.

Of Lung-sicke, or any cough or cold.

IF your Sheepe be troubled with any sickenesse in his Lungs, which you shall know by his coughing and shortnesse of breath, you shall take *Tussilage*, or *Coltsfoot*, and *Lungwort*, and stamping them, straine the juyce into a little *Honey* and *Water*, and give it the Sheepe to drinke.

Chap. VIII.

Of the Worme in the Claw of the Sheep, or any other part.

THis Worme breedeth commonly before, betweene the clawes of the foot: but whereſoever it breedeth, it is knowne by the head, which is like a tuſe of haire, and will ſticke forth in a bunch. The cure is, to ſlit the foot, and draw out the worme without breaking it: and then annoint the place with *Terre*, and *Tallow* mix'd together, for *Terre* ſimply of it ſelfe will draw too much.

The cure.

Chap. IX.

Of the wild fire in Sheepe.

THis diſeaſe which is called the *wild fire*, is a very infectious ſickneſſe, and will indanger the whole flock; but howſoever incurable it is held, yet it is certaine, that if you take *Cherville*, and ſtamping it with old *Ale*, make a ſalve thereof, and annoint the ſore therewith, it will kill the fire, and ſet the Sheepe ſafe: and, though ſome, for this diſeaſe, bury the firſt infected Sheepe alive, with his heeles upward, before the Sheep-coat doore, yet this medicine hath beene ever found more effectuall.

Chap. X.

Of the diſeaſes of the Gall or Choler, Jaundis, and ſuch like.

THeſe diſeaſes are knowne by the yellowneſſe of the Sheepes skin: and the cure is, to take *Plantaine* and *Lettice*, and ſtamping them together, mix their juyce with *Vineger*, and give halfe a pinte to a Sheepe to drinke.

The cure.

Chap. XI.

Of the tough Phlegme, or ſtopping in Sheepe.

IF your Sheepe be ſtopt in the head, breaſt, or weſland, either with tough phlegme, or other cold humours, which you ſhall know by the running of the noſtrills,

then

then take the powder of *Puliol-royall*, and mixing it with clarified *Honey*, dissolve it in warme *water*, the quantity of halfe a pint, and give it the Sheepe to drinke, and it will loosen the phlegme.

Chap. XII.

Of broken bones in Sheepe, or bones out of joynt.

IF your Sheep chance to breake a leg, or have any other bone mis-placed, you shall after you have set it streight and right againe: first bathe it with *Oile* and *wine*, and then dipping a cloth in molten *Pitch-greese*, roll it about, and splint it as occasion shall serve, and so let it remaine nine daies, and dresse it againe, and at the end of the next nine daies, the Sheepe will be able to goe.

Chap. XIII.

Of any sickenesse in Lambes.

IF your Lambe be sicke, you shall give it *Mares milke*, or *Goats-milke*, or the owne Dams *milke* mix'd with *Water* to drinke, and keepe it very warme.

Chap. XIIII.

Of the Sturdy, Turning-evill, or More-fownd.

THese diseases proceed from rankenesse of blood, which offendeth the braine, and other inward parts. The cure then is, to let the Sheepe blood in the eye veines, temple veines, and through the nostrills, then to rub the places with young *Nettles* bruised. The cure.

Chap. XV.

Of diseases in the eyes: as the Haw, dimnesse or any sorenesse.

IF your Sheepe have any imperfection in his eyes, you shall drop the juyce of *Celandine* into them, and it is a present help.

CHAP. XVI.

Of water in a Sheepes belly.

IF a Sheepe have water in his belly, betweene the outward flesh and the rim, then you may safely adventure to let it forth by making a little hole thorow the flesh, and puting in a quill, but if it be between the rim & the bag, then it is incurable, for you may by no meanes cut the rim asunder: When the water is let forth, you shall stitch up the hole, and anoint it with *Tarre* and *Butter* mix'd together. This water if it remaine in the body, will rot the Sheepe.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the tagg'd or belt Sheepe.

A Sheepe is said to be tagg'd or belt, when by a continuall squirt running out of his ordure, hee berayeth his taile, in such wise, that through the heat of the dung it scalded, and breedeth the scab therein. The cure is, with a paire of sheares to cut away the tags, and to lay the sore bare and raw, and then to throw earth dried upon it, and after that, *Tarre* and *Goose-grease* mixt together.

The cure.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Poxe in Sheepe.

THe Poxe in Sheepe are small red pimples like purples rising on the skin, and they are infectious. The cure is, to take *Rosemary*, and boile the leaves in *Vineger*, and bathe the sores therewith, and it will heale them: change of pasture is good for this disease, and you shall also separate the sicke from the sound.

The cure.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Wood-evill or Crampe.

THis disease is weaknesse, or straining of the sinewes, got by colds and surfeits: it is very mortall, and will

run through a whole flock. The cure is to take *Cinkefoile*, or *Five-leaved graſſe*, and boile it in *Wine*, and give the Sheepe a pint thereof to drinke, and keepe him warme, and chafe his legs with *Oile* and *Vinegar*. The Cure.

CHAP. XX.

Of making an Ewe to loove her owne Lambe, or any other Ewes Lambe.

IF an Ewe grow unnaturall, and will not take to her Lamb after ſhe hath yeaned it, you ſhall take a little of the cleane of the Ewe, which is the bed in which the Lambe lay, and force the Ewe to eate it, or at leaſt chew it in her mouth, and ſhe will fall to love it naturally: but if an Ewe have caſt her Lambe, and you would have her take to another Ewes Lambe, you ſhall take the Lambe which is dead, and with it rub and dambe the live Lambe all over, and ſo put it to the Ewe, and ſhe will take as naturall to it, as if it were her owne.

CHAP. XXI.

Of licking up poiſon.

IF a Sheepe chance to lick up any poiſon, you ſhall perceive it by a ſudden ſwelling and reeling of the Sheep. And the cure is, as ſoone as you ſee it ſtagger, to open the mouth, and you ſhall find one or more bliſters upon the tongue roots, you ſhall preſently breake them with your fingers, and rub them with *Earth* or *Sage*, and then piſſe into the Sheepes mouth, and it will doe well. The cure.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Lambes yeaned ſick.

IF a Lamb be yeaned ſick and weak, the Shepherd ſhall fold it up in his Cloake, blow into the mouth of it, and then drawing the Dams dugs, ſquirt milk into its mouth.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making an Ewe to be easily delivered.

IF an Ewe can hardly bring forth or yeane her Lambe, you shall take *Balsamint* or *Horse-mint*, and put either the juyce or powder of it into a little strong *Ale*, and give it the Ewe to drinke, and she will yeane presently.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of Teeth loose.

IF a Sheepes teeth be loose, let him blood in his gums, and under his taile, and then rub his teeth with *Earth*, *Salt*, and *Sage*.

CHAP. XXV.

Of increasing Milke in Ewes.

NOthing increaseth Milk in Ewes more than change of Pasture and feeding: driving them one while unto the Hills, another while to the Vallies: and where the Grasse is sweetest and short, the Sheepe eateth with best appetite, there see you continue longest: for touching giving them *Pitches*, *Dill*, *Aniseeds*, and such like, this change of ground will make milke spring much better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Staggers, or leane sickenesse in Lambs, or elder Sheepe.

THe Staggers is ingendred in Sheepe by surfeiting on *Oke leaves*, *Heath*, *Brake*, or such like, which Lambes are very apt unto: it is cold corrupt blood, or phlegme, gathered together about the braine: and indeed is suddenly mortall. The best cure is, to take *Asafetida*, and dissolve it in warme water, and put the quantity of halfe a spoonfull into each eare of the Sheepe, or Lambe, and it is a present remedy.

The cure.

Chap. XXVII.

Of Wormes in the guts of Sheepe or Lambes.

SHeepe are as subject to wormes in their guts and stomaches, as any other Cattell whatsoever, which you shall know by beating their bellies with their feet, and by looking continually at their bellies. The cure is, to take the leaves of *Coliander*, and to stamp them, and then mixing the juyce thereof with *Hony*, to give the Sheepe to drinke, and then chase him a little, and keepe him two or three houres fasting. The cure.

Chap. XXVIII.

Of the losse of the Cudde.

THat which helpeth the losse of the Cud in Oxe, or Cow, the same is a present remedy for Sheepe, and is spoke of before in a former Chapter.

Chap. XXIX.

Of saving Sheepe from the Rot.

THis disease of rottennesse, is the cruellest of all other amongst Sheep, and extendeth his violence over all the Flocke: nay, over Townes hips and Countries: and though it be held of most men incurable, yet good Government, and this Receite I shall deliver you, will not onely prevent it, but preserve your Sheepe safe: Therefore, as soone as you perceive that any of your Sheepe are tainted, you shall take *Adraces*, which is a certaine salt, gathered from the salt Marches, in the heat of Summer, when the tide is going away, and leaving certaine drops of salt water on the grasse, then the violent heat of the Sunne turnes it to salt: and to speake briefely, all salt made by the violence of the Sunnes heat onely, is taken for *Adraces*, of which there is infinite store in *Spaine*. With this *Adraces*, rub the mouths of all your Sheepe once a weeke, and you shall never need to feare

the rotting of them, for it hath beene well tried: and as I imagine, the experiment was found out from this very ground. It is a rule, and well knowne at this day in *Lincolneshire*, and in *Kent*, that upon the salt Marshes sheepe did never die of the rot: no other reason being knowne therefore, but the licking up of that salt, and without doubt, it is most infallible, and most easie.

Chap. XXX.

A few Precepts for the Shepherd.

IT is meet that every good and carefull Shepherd know what food is good for sheepe, what hurtfull: that following the one, and eschewing the other, hee may ever keepe his Cattell in health. The grasse that is most wholesome for sheepe, is that which hath growing in it good store of *Melilot*, *Clover*, *Kelse-heale*, *Cynkefoile*, *Broome*, *Pymperwell*, and white *Hoxhound*.

The grasse which is unwholesome for sheepe, is that which hath growing amongst it *Spearewort*, *Penni-wort*, or *Penni-grasse*, and any weed which growes from inundations, or over-flowes of water; likewise *Knot-grasse* is not good, nor *mildew'd-grasse*. Of all rots the *Hunger-rot* is the worst, for it both putrefieth the flesh and skin, and this is most incident to field-sheep, for to pasture-sheep it never happeneth. The next rot to it, is the *Belt-rot*, which comes by great store of raine, immediatly after a Sheep is new shorne, which *mildewing* the skin, corrupts the body; and this also is most incident to field-sheepe, which want shelter. There be little white *Snailes* which a sheepe will licke up, and they will soone rot him.

There will grow upon an Ewes Teats little dry scabs, which will stop their milke; when the Lambs sucke, the Shepherd must have care to pull them away.

A Sheepe will have a bladder of water under his chin ſometimes, which the Shepherd muſt be carefull to let out and lance, or the Sheepe will not proſper.

It is good not to ſheare Sheepe before *Midſummer*, for the more he ſweateth in his wooll, the better, and more kindly it is.

If you will know the age of your Sheepe, looke in his mouth, and when he is one ſheare, he will have two broad teeth afore: when he is two ſheare, he will have foure broad teeth afore: when he is three, hee will have ſixe, and when he is foure ſheare, he will have eight: and after thoſe yeeres, his mouth will begin to breake: for, touching that rule of the evenneſſe and unevenneſſe of the mouth, it is uncertaine, and faileth upon many occaſions.

The end of the Sheepe.

Of Goats.

Chap. 1.

of Goats, and of their nature.

SEeing Goats are not of any generall uſe in our Kingdome, but onely nouriſhed in ſome wilde and barren places, where Cattell of better profit can hardly be maintained, as in the mountainous parts of *Wales*, in the barrenneſt parts of *Cornewall* and *Deveſhire*, on *Malborne* hills, and ſome few about the *Peake*: I will not ſtand upon any large diſcourſe, but as briefely as I can, give you their natures and cures. You ſhall then know, that the Goat is

The nature of Goats.

is a beast of a hot, strong, and lusty constitution; especially in the generation, that they exceede all other Cattell: delight to live in mountaines that be high, craggie, and full Bushes, Bryers, and other wood; they will feed in any plaine pastures, but their speciall delight is in brousing upon trees, they are so nimble of foot, that they will goe in places of greatest danger. The profit which commeth from them, is their Milk, which is an excellent restorative, and their Kids which are an excellent Venison. They are in other Countries, as in *Spaine*, the Ilands of the *Azores*, and the Ilands of the *Canaries*, preserved for the chase, and for hunting, as wee preserve our Deere, both red and fallow, and make excellent pastime.

His shape.

For the shape of the Goat: he would have a large body, and well haired, great legs, upright joynts, not bending, a necke plaine and short, a head small and slender, large homes, and bending, a big eye, and a long beard, and his colour white, blacke, or pide. Some doe use to sheare them, to make rough mantles of; but it is not so with us in *England*. The she-Goat would have large Teats, and big Udders, hanging eares, and no hornes, as they have in many places.

The ordering of Goats.

These Goates would be kept in small Flockes, or Herds, as not above a hundred in a Herd: as they must in the heat of Sommer have much shade, so in the Winter likewise much shelter, for they can neither indure extremity of heat nor cold, especially, the violence of Winter, for that will make the she-Goat cast her Kidde, or bring it forth untimely. These love Mast well, but yet you must give them other food to mixe with it. The best time to let the Male and Female goe together, is about the beginning of *December*. If you h use Goats, in the Winter, let them have no litter to lie on, but the

floore

floore paved, or gravelled, for otherwise, their owne heat will annoy them: they must also be kept very cleanly, for they can indure no filthy savors. For the young Kids, you shall in all points order them as you do your Lambs.

Now, for their preservation, if they be suffered to goe and choose their owne food, they are to themselves so good physicians, that they will seldome or never be troubled with any inward sickneſſe; only the unnaturall exceſſe of their luſt maketh them grow ſoone old, and ſo both paſt uſe and profit. For thoſe particular diſeaſes which accidentally fall upon them: here followeth the Cures.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Peſtilence in Goats, or any inward and hidden ſickneſſe.

IF you perceive your Goats to droope, or looke with ſullen or ſad countenances, it is an aſſured ſigne of ſickneſſe; but if they foame, or father at the mouth, then it is a ſigne of the Peſtilence. The cure is, firſt, to ſeparate them from the ſound, then to let them blood and give them the *Buds* and *Leaves* of *Celodine*, with Ruſhes and Reeds to eate, and it is a preſent remedy. The cure.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Dropſie in Goats.

GOates are very much ſubject unto the Dropſie through their exceſſe of drinking of water, the ſigne whereof is a great inflammation and heat in the skin: the cure is, to ſeethe *Wormwood* in *water* and *ſalt*, and give a pint thereof to the Goat to drinke divers mornings, for to ſit and let out the water under the ſhoulders, is not ſo certaine and ſafe a cure. The cure.

CHAP.

Chap. IIII.

Of stopping the Teates.

There will ingender in the Teats of Goats, a certaine rough hard phlegme, which will stop the milke from issuing: which to cure, you shall with your finger and thumb pull it away, and then anoint the place with *Honey*, and the *Goats milke* mix'd together.

The cure.

Chap. V.

Of Goats that cannot Kidde.

Goats above other Cattell, are troubled with hardnesse in Kidding, by reason that if they be chafed or hunted, their Kids will turne in their bellies: the Remedy then to preserve them from that danger, is to keep them quiet and untroubled, untill they have Kidded.

Chap. VI.

Of the Tetter, or drie Scab in Goats.

To heale any Tetter, or dry Scab in Goats, take blacke *Sope*, *Tarre*, *Hogs-grease*, and *Brimstone*, mix them well together, and annoint the sores therewith, and it will heale them.

Chap. VII.

Of gelding Kiddes in the Summer season.

Kids being gelt in Summer season, as those which are late Kidded must necessarily be, the Flie will be so busie with the sore, that with their blowings they will breed such store of *Maggots* in the wound, that it will endanger their lives: to defend them from such annoyance of the *Flie*, you shall take *Soot*, *Tarre*, and thick *Creame*, and mix them well together, and anoint the wound therewith, and it will both heale it, and keepe the *Flie* away.

Chap.

Chap. VIII.
Of the Itch in Goats.

IF your Goats be troubled with any Itch, ſo that they cannot feede for clawing and biting themſelves, you ſhall waſh their ſkins with old *Chamber-lye*, and greene *Coporus* well boil'd together, and it will kill the Itch.

Chap. IX.
Of the tuell ſtopping in Goats.

GOats, when they are ſucking on their Dammes, or when they are new Kidded, will commonly have a great laxe or ſquirt, ſo that the ordure which commeth from them, if it be not well cleanſed and taken from them, it will with their owne naturall heat ſo bake and dry, that it will ſtop up their tuells, ſo that they cannot dung, which if it be not holpen, the Kidde will die. The cure is, to cleanſe the place, and open the tuell, and then put into it an inch, or thereabout, of a ſmall *Candle* end dip'd in *Honey*, and then anoint all the tuell over with *Capons greaſe*. The cure.

Chap. X.
Of the Staggers, or turning-evill in Goats.

IF your Goats be troubled with the ſtaggers, or Reeling-evill, which is a diſeaſe bred in them by the violent heat of the Sunne: you ſhall take *Bay-ſalt* and *Perſoyne*, and mixe them together, and give the Goat halfe a pint thereof to drinke: or elſe take *Hony-ſuckle* and *Dragon*, of each alike, ſo grounds of *Ale*, with a little new *Milke*, ſtampe the herbes, and then mingle them together, then put thereto a few *Cloves* groſſely beaten, and then boile it againe, then coole it, and give the ſicke Goat three or foure ſpoonfulls thereof to drinke, and it

will

will cure her. Now for any other infirmities which shall happen unto Goats, you may cure them with the same medicine, which you cure Sheepe, for their natures doe not much differ.

The end of the Goate.

Of Swine.

Chap. I.

Of all manner of Swine, their natures, use, shapes, and preservation.



Although Swine are accompted troublesome, noisome, unruly, and great ravenours, as indeede their natures are not much differing from such qualities, yet the utility and profit of them will easily wipe off those offences; for to speake truly of the Swine, he is the *Husband-mans* Scavenger, and the *Housewives* most wholesome sinke, for his food and living is by that which would else not in the yard, make it beastly, and breed no good measure, or being cast downe the ordinary sinke in the house breed noisome smells, corruption, and infection; for from the *Husband-man* he taketh Pulse, Chaffe, Barne-dust, mans Ordure, Garbage, and the Weedes of his yard; and from the *Housewife* her draffe, swillings, Whey, washing of tubs, and such like, with which he will live and keepe a good state of body, very sufficiently, and though hee is accompted good in no place but the dish nopely, yet there he is so lovely and so wholesome, that all other faults may be borne with

He

He is by nature greedy, given much to root up grounds, and teare downe fences, he is very lecherous, and in that odious and brutish: he is subject to much anger, and the sight of the Bores is exceeding mortall: they can by no meanes endure stormes, winds, or foule weather, they are excellent obſervers of their owne homes, and exceeding great lovers one of another: ſo that they will die upon any beaſt that offendeth their fellowes.

Now touching the choice of Swine, you ſhall underſtand, that no Countrey in *England* breedeth naturally better Swine one than another: But if any have preheminence, then I muſt preferre *Leiceſter-ſhire*, and ſome parts of *Northampton-ſhire*, and clay-countries bordering *Leiceſter ſhire*, and the reaſon I take to be, their great multiplicity of graine, eſpecially Beanes and Pulſe. For the Maſt-countries, though they are good feeders, they are no large breeders, whence it comes, that your wilde Swine is ever your leaſt Swine, but your ſweeteſt Bacon. But if the race and keeping be alike, the proportion and goodneſſe will be alike: therefore in the choice of your Swine, chiefly the Bores and Sowes which you breed of, let them be long and large of body, deepe ſided, and deepe bellied, thicke thighes, and ſhort legs, for though the long-legg'd Swine appeare a goodly beaſt, yet hee but couzeneth the eye, and is not ſo profitable to the Butcher: high clawes, thicke necke, a ſhort and ſtrong groine, and a good thicke chine well ſet with ſtrong briſtles: the colour is beſt which is all of one piece, as all white, or all ſanded, the pide are the worſt, and moſt apt to take Meazells, the black is tolerable, but our Kingdome through the coldneſſe breedeth them ſeldome.

Of the choice and ſhape of Swine.

The uſe and profit of Swine is onely (as the *Husbandman* ſaith) for the roofe, which is Bacon, for the ſpit which

The vse and profect of Swine.

which is Porke, Sowse and Puddings, and for breede, which is their Pigs onely. To have too many Sowes in a yarde is not good, for their increase, and bringing forth is so great, that they will for want of food eate one another: A Sowe will bring forth Pigs three times a yeere, namely, at the end of every ten weekes, and the numbers are great which they will bring forth: for I have knowne one Sow have twenty Pigs at one litter, twelve, foureteen and sixteen are very common; yet a Sow can bring up no more Pigs than shee hath Teats, therefore looke how many shee hath, and so many Pigs preserve of the best, the rest cast away, or put to other Sowes, which want, yet give sucke. A Sow will bring Pigs from one yeere old, till she be seven yeeres old: The Pigs which you reare after you have chosen the best for Boares or Sowes to breed on, geld the rest, both males and females: the males will make goodly Hogs, which are excellent Bacon or Porke, and the females, which are called spaid-guilts, will doe the like; and breed a great deale more grease in their bodies, whence it comes that the Husbandmen esteemes one spaid-guilt before two Hogs. Young Shots, which are Swine of three quarters, or but one yeere old, are the daintiest Porke.

Now for the preservation of Swine, it is contained in their government and food, and is all that belongeth to the office of the Swine-herd. The orderliest feeding of Swine is (when you keep them, but in good state of body, and not seeke to fat them) in the morning early when you unstie them, is to give them Draffe, Pulse, or other garbage, with swillings in their troughes, and when they have eaten it to drive them to the field, where they may graze and root for their food: and of grounds the fotemarish and moorish grounds are the best, where they may

may get the roots of Sedge, Reeds, Rushes, Knot-grasse, and such like, which is wholesome for Swine, on the Fallow or tilthe field, where they may root at pleasure, and by killing the weed, bring profit to the Earth: and at the fall of the Leafe, it is good to drive them to hedges, where they may get Hawes, Hips, Sloes, Crabs, or such fruit, which is also very wholesome: and the poorer sort will gather these fruits, and keepe them safe to feed their Swine with all the Winter. When Evening commeth, you shall drive your Swine home, and then filling their troughes with Draffe and Swillings, let them fill their bellies, and then stie them up, so shall you keepe them from doing other hurts or injuries. If once in a fortnight you mixe with your Swillings some *Radle*, or red *Oaker*, it will preserve them wonderfully from Meazells, and all inward infections. And thus much for the generall discourse of Swine: Now I will proceed to their particular infirmities, and other businesses.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Feaver, or any hidden sickenesse in Swine.

THere is no Beast maketh his sickenesse so apparant as the Swine, for when he findeth any griefe or distemperature in his body, he presently droopeth, forsakes his meate, and will not eate till he find in himselfe a perfect recovery: Therefore when you shall so find him to forsake his meat, you shall first let him blood under his taile, and under his eares, and if they bleed not freshly enough, you shall beate them with a small sticke, and that will bring forth the blood, then wrap about the wounds, the barke of a young *Oster*, and then keepe him warme, and give him to drinke warme *Swillings*, well mixed with *Barley meale*, and red *Oaker*. The cure.

Chap. III.

Of the Murren, Pestilence, or Cather in Swine.

THese diseases being all of one nature, are very much incident to Swine, and spring from many grounds, as from corruption in blood ingendred by the eating of rotten fruit, or too much Butchers garbage, and many times by eating too rank grasse, wherin is much *Hemlock*: The particular signes are moist eyes, and their heads borne on each side; but the generall knowledge is their fasting and mortality. The cure is, to give them in warme *wash, beans dung*, and boil'd *Liverwort*, with a little *red oaker*.

The cure.

Chap. IIII.

Of the Gall in Swine.

SWine will oft have an over-flowing of the Gall, because choller is much powerfull in them, which you shall know by a swelling which will rise under their jawes. And the cure is, to stamp *Gallwort*, or *Saffron*, and mixe it with *Hony* and *Water*, and then straining it, give it the Swine to drinke by a pint at a time.

The cure.

Chap. V.

Of the Measels in Swine.

THis disease of all other, is the most common in Swine, and with most ease helped: As thus, you shall take the oldest *Vrine* you can get, and mix it with red *Oaker*, till it be thicke, and about the quantity of an *Ale* quart, then mix it with a gallon of warme sweet *Whey*, and give it the Swine to drink, after he hath been kept all night fasting.

Chap. VI.

Of Impostumes in any part of a Swine.

SWine will have Impostumes in many parts of their bodies, as under their throats, their eares, bellies, and oft

oft upon their sides. The cure is, if they be soft, to lance them, and let out the matter, and then heale them with *Tarre* & *Butter*, but if they be not soft, then let the Swine blood under the tongue, and rub all his mouth, chaps, and groine with *Wheat-meale* and *Salt*, and the Impostume will goe away. The cure.

Chap. VII.

Of vomiting in Swine.

IF your Swine doe vomit and cast up his meate, you shall give him spelted *Beanes* to eate, and they will strengthen his stomach.

Chap. VIII.

Of leanesse, mislike, scurfe, and mangiuesse in Swine.

THese diseases proceed from corruption of blood, ingendred by lying wet in their sties, having filthy rotten Litter, or much scarcity of meat. The cure is, first to let the Swine blood under the taile, then to take a woollcard, and to combe off all the scurfe and filth from the Swines backe, even till his skin bleed: then take *Tarre*, *Hogs-grease*, and *Brimstone*, and mixing them well together, anoint the Swine therewith, then let the stie be mended, his Litter be sweet, and give him good warme food, and the Swine will be fat & sound very suddenly. The cure.

Chap. IX.

Of the sleeping evill in Swine.

SWine are much subject to this disease in the Summertime, and you shall know it by their continuall sleeping, and neglecting to eate their meat. The cure is, to house them up, and keepe them fasting 24 houres; then in the morning, when hunger pincheth them, to give them to drinke water, in which is stamp'd good store of The Cure.

Stonecrope; which as ſoone as they have drunke, they will vomit and caſt, and that is a preſent remedy.

Chap. X.

Of paine in the Milt.

SWine are oft troubled with paine in their Milts or ſpleenes, which proceedeth from the eating of Maſt, when they are firſt put thereunto, through their over greedy eating thereof, and is knowne by reeling, going of one ſide. The cure is, to give them the juice of *Wormewood*, in a little *Honied water* to drinke, and it will aſſwage the paine. The cure.

Chap. XI.

Of the unnaturalneſſe of Sowes.

MAny Sowes doe prove ſo unnaturall, that they will devoure their Pigs when they have farro'd them, which ſpringeth from an unnaturall greedineſſe in them: which to help, you muſt watch her when ſhe farroweth, and take away the Pigs as they fall, then take the wreckling or worſt Pig, and anoint it all over with the juice of *Stonecrope*, and ſo give it the Sow againe: and if ſhe devoure it, it will make her caſt and vomit ſo extremely, that the paine of the ſurfeit will make her loath to doe the like againe; But of all cures, the beſt for ſuch an unnatural beaſt, is to feed her well, and then kill her.

Chap. XII.

Of the Laxe or Flixe in Hogs.

FOr the Laxe or Flixe in Swine, you ſhall give them *Ver juyce* and *Milke* mix'd together to drinke, and then feed him with dry food; as ſpletted *Beanes*, *Acornes*, or *Acorn-huſkes*. This is alſo excellent and approved for young Pigs and Shots, when they have any ſcouring.

Chap.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the lugging of Swine with Dogs.

IF your Swine be extremely lugg'd and bitten with Dogs, to prevent the rankling and impostumation of the sore, you shall anoint it with *Vinegar*, *Sope*, and *Tallow* mix'd together, and it will cure the same.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Poxe in Swine.

THe Poxe is a filthy and infectious disease in Swine, proceeding from corrupt blood, ingendred by poverty, wet lying, lowsinesse, and such like, and the Swine can never prosper which hath them. The cure, is to give him first to drinke two spoonfuls of *Lostie Treacle* in a pint of *Heated-water*, which will expell the infection outwardly, then to anoint the sores with *Brimstone* & *Beares-greese* mixt together, and so separate the sicke from the sound. The cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of killing Maggots in the eares or other parts of Swine.

IF Maggots shall breed in the eares of your Swine, which have been lugg'd with Dogs, for want of good looking unto, as oft it happeneth; you shall take either the sweetest *Wort* you can get, or else *Hony*, and anoint the sores therewith, and the Maggots presently will fall off and die.

CHAP. XVI.

Of feeding a Swine exceeding fat either for Bacon or Lard.

DIvers men according to the nature of divers Countries, have divers waies in feeding of their Swine, as those which live neere unto Woods and places where store of Mast is, turne their Swine unto the Mast for fine The feeding of Swine in wood Countries.

or eight weekes, and then having got flesh and fatnesse on their backes doe bring them home, and put them up in Sties, and then feed them for ten daies or a fortnight after, with old dry Pease given them oft in the day, a little at once, with water, as much as they will drinke: for this will harden the flesh and fat so, that it will not consume when it comes to boiling: this manner of feeding is good, and not to be disliked.

The feeding of Swine in champaine countries.

Now the feeding of Swine in champaine Countries, which are farre from woods, is in this manner: First, you shall Stie up those Swine which you intend to feed, and let them not come out of the same until they be fed, but have their food and water brought unto them: now, the first two daies you shall give them nothing; the third day you shall early in the morning give them a pretty quantity of dry Pease or Beanes, at noone you shall give them as much more, at foure of clock as much more, and when you goe to bed as much more, but all that day no water: The next day you shall feed them againe at the same houres, and set water by them, that they may drinke at their owne pleasures, and twice or thrice a weeke, as your provision will serve you, it is good to fill their bellies with sweet Whey, Butter-milke, or warme wash, but by no meanes from the proportion of their Pease; and by thus doing, you shall feed a Swine fat enough for the slaughter in foure or five weekes.

Of feeding at the Racke.

There be other *Husbandmen* in champaine Countries, as in *Leicester-shire*, and such like, that put their Swine to Pease-racks or stackes set in the fields, neere unto water-furrowes or rundles, so that they may let the water into the stack-yard: and then morning and evening cut a cutting of the stack or racke, and spread the reapes amongst the Swine: this maner of feeding is best for small porkets

and

and will fat them very reasonably in three weekes or a moneth. If you feed Sheepe amongst your Porkets, it is very good, and daily by many practised; for by that meanes you shall not lose any of your Graine, for what your Sheepe cannot gather up, your Porkers will.

Of feeding of Swine, in, or about great Cities.

Now, for such as live in or neer about great Cities, or Townes, as *London*, *Yorke*, or such like, and have neither great store of Malt, nor great store of Graine; yet they have a manner of feeding as good, and somewhat more speedier than any of the other, only the Bacon is not so sweet or toothsome; and thus it is: They stie up their farlings, as is before said, and then take Chandlers Graines, which is the dregs and offall of rendred Tallow, as hard skins, kells, and fleshly lumpes, which will not melt, together with other course skinnes of the Tallow, Suet, or Kitching-fee; and mixing in with warme water, give it the Swine to eate three or foure times in the day, and it will suddenly puffe him up with fatnesse, then bestow of every Swine a Bushell of dry Pease to harden his flesh, and you may then kill them at your pleasure. The only danger of this food is, it will at first sometimes make Swine loure, especially young Pigs, if they eate it: but as soone as you perceive such a fault, give unto your elder Swine Milk and Verdjuyce, and to your sucking Pigs Verdjuyce only.

Of feeding of Hogs for larde, or Boares for Brawne.

Now, lastly, the best feeding of a Swine for larde, or a Boare for Brawne, is to feed them the first weeke with Barley sodden till it breake, and sod in such quantity, that it may ever be given sweet: then after to feed them with raw malt from the floore, before it be dried, till they be fat enough; and then for a weeke after, to give them dry Pease or Beanes to harden their flesh. Let their drinke be the washing of Hogsheads, or Ale-barrells, or

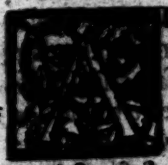
sweet Whey, and let them have store there of. This manner of feeding, breeds the whitest, fattest, and best flesh that may be, as hath beene approved by the best *Husbands*.

The end of the Swine of all sorts.

Of Conies.

Chap. I.

Of the tame rich Conie, his nature, choice, profit, and preservation.



The nature of the Conie.

ALL sorts of Conies may as well be kept tame as wilde, and doe above other Beasts delight in imprisonment and solitarinesse, which proceedeth from the strength of melancholy in their nature, being creatures so much participating of the earth, that their delight is to live in holes, rocks, and other darke Caverns. They are violently hot in the act of generation, and performe it with such vigour and excesse, as to swound and lie in trances a good space after the deede is done. The males are given to much cruelty, and would kil the yong Rabbets, if he could come to them: Whence it proceedeth, that the females after they have kindled, hide their young ones, and close up their holes, so that the Bucke cannot find them. The Female or Doe Conies are wonderfull in their increase, and bring forth young ones every moneth: Therefore, when you keepe them tame in Boxes, you must observe to watch them, and as soone

ſoone as they have kindled, to put them to the Bucke, or otherwiſe they will mourne, and hardly bring up their young ones.

The boxes, in which you ſhall keepe your tame Conies, would be made of thin Wainſcot-boards, ſome two foot ſquare, and one foot high; and that ſquare muſt be divided into two roomes, a greater roome with open windowes of wyre, thorow which the Conie may feed; and a leſſer roome without light, in which the Conie may lodge and kindle, and before them both a Trough, in which you may put meat, and other neceſſaries for the Conie; and thus you may make boxe upon boxe in divers ſtories, keeping your Buckes by themſelves, and your Does by themſelves, except it be ſuch Does as have not bred, and then you may let a Bucke lodge with them: alſo when your Doe hath kindled one neſt, and then kindleth another, you ſhall take the firſt from her, and put them together in a ſeverall boxe, amongſt Rabbers of their owne age; provided, that the Boxe be not peſtred, but that they may have eaſe and liberty. *Of boxes for tame Conies.*

Now, for the choice of theſe tame rich Conies, you ſhall not, as in other Catrell, looke to their ſhape, but to their richneſſe, onely elect your Buckes the largeſt, and goodlieſt Conies you can get: and for the richneſſe of the ſkin, that is accounted the richeſt, which hath the equalleſt mixture of blacke and white haire together, yet the blacke rather ſhadowing the white, than the white any thing at all over-maſtring the blacke, for a blacke ſkin, with a few ſilver haires, is much better than a white ſkin, with a few blacke haires: but as I ſaid before, to have them equally, or indifferently mix'd, is the beſt above all other: the Furre would be thicke, deepe, ſmooth, and ſhining, and a blacke coat without ſilver haires, though *Of the choice of rich Conies.*

it

it be not reckoned a rich coat, yet it is to be preferred before a white, a pyde, a yellow, a dun, or a gray.

Of the profit of rich Conies.

Now for the profit of these rich Conies, (for unlesse they did farre away, and by many degrees exceed the profit of all other Conies, they were not worthy the charge which must be bestowed upon them) it is this: First, every one of the rich Conies which are killed in season; as from *Martilmas* untill after *Candlemas*, is worth any five other Conies, for they are of body much fatter and larger, and when another skin is worth two pence or three pence at the most, they are worth two shillings, or two shilling sixe pence: Againe, they increase oftner, and bring forth more Rabbets at one kindling than any wilde Conie doth; they are ever ready at hand for the dish, Winter and Summer, without charge of Nets, Ferrets, or other Engines, and give their bodies *gratis*, for their skins will ever pay their Masters charge with a most large interest.

Of the feeding and preservation of Conies.

Now for the feeding and preservation of these rich Conies, it is nothing so costly or troublesome as many have imagined, and as some (ignorant in the skill of keeping them) have made the world thinke: for the best food you can feed a Cony with, is the sweetest, shortest, softest, and best *Hay* you can get, of which one load will serve two hundred couples a yeere, and out of the stocke of two hundred, you may spend in your house two hundred, and sell in the Market two hundred more, yet maintaine the stocke good, and answer every ordinary casualty. This *Hay* in little cloven sticks, might with ease reach it, and pull it out of the same, yet so, as they may not scatter nor waste any. In the troughes under their boxes, you shall put sweet *Oates*, and their water, and this should be the ordinary and constant food wherwith you

should

ſhould feed your Conies, for all other ſhould be uſed but phyſically, as for the preſervation of their healths: as thus, you ſhall twice or thrice in a fortnight, for the cooling of their bodies, give them *Greenes*; as *Mallowes*, *Clover graſſe*, *Sower docks*, blades of greene *Corne*, *Cabbage*, or *Colewort-leaves*, and ſuch like, all which cooleth and nouriſheth exceedingly: ſome uſe to give them ſometimes ſweet *Graines*, but that muſt be uſed very ſeldome, for nothing ſooner rotteth a Cony.

You muſt alſo have great care, that when you cut any graſſe for them, or other weeds, that there grow no yong *Hemlocke* among it, for though they will eate it with all greedineſſe, yet it is a preſent poiſon, and kills ſuddenly: you muſt alſo have an eſpeciall care every day to make their boxes ſweet and cleane, for the ſtrong ſavour of their ordure and piſſe is ſo violent, that it will both annoy themſelves, and thoſe which ſhall be frequent amongſt them.

Now for the infirmities which are incident unto them, they are but two: the firſt is rottenneſſe, which commeth by giving them too much greene meat, or gathering their *greenes*, and giving it them with the dew on; therefore let them have it but ſeldome, and then the drineſſe of the *Hay* will ever drinke up the moiſture, knit them, and keepe them ſound without danger. Of the rot in Conies.

The next is a certaine rage or madneſſe, ingendred by corrupt blood ſpringing from the rankeneſſe of their keeping; and you ſhall know it by their wallowing and tumbling with their heeles upward, and leaping in their boxes. The cure is, to give them *Hare-thiſtle* to eate, and it will heale them. And thus much for the tame rich Cony, and his properties. Of madneſſe in Conies.

The end of the foure footed Beaſts.

The

The second Booke.

Of Poultry.

CHAP. I.

Conteining the ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing of all infirmities of Poultry, as Cockes, Hens, Chickens, Capons, Geese, Turkies, Phesants, Partridges, Quailes, House-Doves, and all sorts of Fowle whatsoever. And first of the Dung-hill Cocke, Hen, Chicken, and Capon.

SOme small thing hath been written of this nature before, but so drawne from the opinions of old Writers: as *Italians*, *French*, *Dutch*, and such like, that it hath no coherence or congruity with the practice and experience of *English* customes, both their rules and climbes being so different from ours, that except we were to live in their countries, rules which are printed are useless, and to no purpose. To let passe the opinion of strangers, and come to our owne home-bred knowledge, which is so mix'd with all profitable experiments, that it needeth not the helpe of other Nations so much, as men would make us believe.

You shall understand that the dung-hill Cock (for the fighting-Cocke deserveth a much larger and particular discourse) is a fowle of all other birds the most manliest, stately, and majesticall, very tame and familiar with the man, and naturally inclined to live and prosper in habitable Houses: he is hot and strong in the act of generation, and will serve ten Hens sufficiently, and some twelve and

and thirteen: He delighteth in open and liberall plaines, where he may lead forth his Hens into greene Pastures, and under hedges, where they may warme and bathe themselves in the Sunne, for to be penn'd up in walled places, or in paved Coures is most unnaturall unto them, neither will they prosper therein.

Of the choice and shape of the Cocke.

Now of the choice and shape of the dung-hill Cocke, hee would be of a large and well sized body, long from the head to the rumpe, and thicke in the garth; his necke would be long, loose, and curiously bending it, and his body together, being streight, and high up erected, as the Falcon, and other birds of prey are, his combe, wattles, and throat would be large, great compasse, jagged, and very Scarlet-red, his eyes round and great, the colour answering the colour of his plume or male, as gray with gray, red with red, or yellow with yellow, his bill would be crooked, sharpe, and strongly set on to his head, the colour being suitable with the colour of the feathers on his head, his maine or neck-feathers would be very long, bright and shining, covering from his head to his shoulders, his legs streight, and of a strong beame, with large long spurres, sharpe, and a little bending, and the colour blacke, yellow, or blewish, his clawes short, strong, and well wrinckled; his taile long, and covering his body very closely: and for the generall colour of the dung-hill Cocke, it would be red, for that is medicinall, and oft used in Cullisses and restoratives. This Cocke should be valiant within his owne walke, and if he be a little knavish, he is so much the better; he would be oft crowing, and busie in scratching the earth to find out wormes, and other food for his Hens.

Of the Hen her choice and shape.

Now for the Hen, if she be a good one, shee should not differ much from the nature of the Cocke, but be valiant,

liant, vigilant, and laborious both for her selfe and her Chickens. In shape, the biggest and largest are the best, every proportion answering these before described of the Cocke, only instead of her combe, shee should have upon her crowne a high thicke tuft of feathers: to have many and strong claws is good, but to want hinder claws is better, for they oft break the Egs, and such Hens sometimes prove unnaturall: it is not good to chuse a crowing hen, for they are neither good breeders, nor good laiers. If you chuse Hens to sit, chuse the elder, for they be constant, and will sit out their times, and if you will chuse Hens to lay, chuse the youngest, for they are lusty and prone to the act of ingendring, but for neither purpose chuse a fat Hen, for if you set her, she will forsake her nest, and if you keepe her to lay, she will lay her Egs without shells. Besides, a fat Hen will waxe slothfull, and neither delight in the one nor in the other Act of nature, such hens then are ever fitter for the dish than the hen-house.

Of setting Hens.

The best time to set hens, to have the best, largest, and most kindly Chickens, is in *February*, in the increase of the Moone, so that she may hatch or disclose her Chickens in the increase of the next new Moone, being in *March*, for one brood of *March* Chickens is worth three broods of any other: you may set hens from *March* till *October*, and have good Chickens, but not after by any meanes, for the Winter is a great enemy to their breeding. A hen doth sit twenty one daies just, and then hatcheth, but Peahens, Turkies, Geese, Ducks, and other water-fowle sit thirty: so that if you set your hen, as you may doe upon any of their egs, you must set her upon them nine daies before you set her upon her owne. A hen will cover nineteene egs well, and that is the most in true rule, she should cover, but upon what number soever

ſoever you ſet her, let it be odde, for ſo the egs will lie round, cloſe, and in even proportion together: It is good when you lay your egges firſt under your hens, to marke the upper ſide of them, and then to watch the hen, to ſee if ſhe buſie her ſelfe to turne them from the one ſide to the other, which if you finde ſhe doth not, then when ſhe riſeth from her egges, to feed or bathe her ſelfe, you muſt ſupply that office, and turne every egge your ſelfe, and eſteeme your hen of ſo much the leſſe reckoning for the uſe of breeding: be ſure that the egs which you lay under her, be new and ſound, which you may know by their heavineſſe, fulneſſe, and cleereneſſe, if you hold them up betwixt the Sun and your eye-ſight; you muſt by no meanes, at any time raiſe your hen from her neſt, for that will make her utterly forſake it.

Now, for helping a hen to hatch her egges, or doing that which ſhould be her office, it is unneceſſary, and ſhall be much better to be forborne than any way uſed; or to make doubt of bringing forth, or to thinke the henne ſitteth too long (as many fooliſh curious houſe-wives doe) if you be ſure you ſet her upon ſound egges, is frivolous, but if you ſet her upon unſound egges, then blame your ſelfe, both of the loſſe and injury done to the hen in her loſſe of labour. A hen will be a good ſitter from the ſecond yeere of her laying, to the fifth, but hardly any longer: you ſhall obſerve, ever when your hen riſeth from her neſt, to have meate and water ready for her, leſt ſtraying too farre to ſeeke her food, ſhe let her egges coole too much, which is very hurtfull. In her abſence you ſhall ſtirre up the ſtraw of her neſt, and make it ſoft and handſome, and lay the egges in order, as ſhe left them: doe not in the election of your egges, chooſe thoſe which are monſtrous great

Choice of Egs.

great, for they many times haue two yolkes, and though some write, that such Egs will bring out two Chickens, yet they are deceiued, for if they bring forth two, they are commonly most abortiue, and monstrous. To perfume the Neast with Brimstone is good, but with Rosemary is much better. To set Hens in the Winter time in Stowes or Ouens, is of no vse with vs in *England*, and though they may by that meanes bring forth, yet will the Chickens be neuer good nor profitable, but like the planting of Lemon and Pomegranate-trees, the fruit will come a great deale short of the charges. When your Hen at any time is absent from her Neast, you must haue great care, to see that the Cocke come not to sit vpon the Egs, (as he will offer to doe) for he will endanger to breake them, and make her loue her Neast worse.

As soone as your Chickens be hatch'd, if any be weaker than other, you shall lap them in Wooll, and let them haue the aire of the fire, and it will strengthen them, to perfume them with a little Rosemary, is very wholsome also; and thus you may in a Sive keepe the first hatche Chickens, till the rest be disclosed (for Chickens would haue no meate for two daies) and some shells being harder than other, they will take so much distance of time in opening: yet vnlesse the Chickens be weake, or the Hen rude, it is not amisse to let them alone vnder her, for shee will nouriish them most kindly: after two daies is past, the first meate you give them, should be very small Oate-meale, some dry, and some steep'd in Milke, or else fine Wheat-bread crums, and after they haue got strength, then Curds, Cheese-parings, white-bread crusts sook'd in Milke or drinke, Barley-meale or Wheat-bread scalded, or any such like soft meate that is small, and will easily be diuided. It is good to keepe

Of Chickens.

Chickes

Chickes one fortnight in the house, and after to suffer them to goe abroad with the Hen to worme, for that is very wholesome; to chop greene *Chives* amongst your Chickens meate, will preserve them from the Rie, and other diseases in the head; neither must you at any time let your Chickens want water, for if they be forc'd to drink in puddles, it will breed the Pip: also, to feed upon *Tares*, *Darnell*, or *Cockle*, is very dangerous for young Chickens.

Of feeding and cramming Chickens.

You may by these foods before said, feed Chickens very fat under their dams: but if you will have fat cram'd Chickens, you shall coope them up when the Dam forsaketh them, and the best crams for them is wheat-meale and milke made into dough, and then the crams steep'd in milke, and so thrust downe their throats; but in any case, let the crams be small, and well wet for choaking. Fouretene daies will feed a Chicken sufficiently: and thus much briefly for your breed.

Of preserving Egges.

Now, because Egs of themselves are a singular profit: you shall understand, that the best way to preserve or keepe them long, is as some thinke, to lay them in good Straw, and cover them close, but that is too cold, and besides will make them mustie: others will lay them in Bran, but that is too hot, and will make them putrefie: and others will lay them in Salt, but that makes them wast and diminish: the best way then to keepe them most sweete, most sound, and most full, is onely to keepe them in a heape of old Malt, close, and well covered all over.

Of gathering Egges.

You shall gather your Egs up once a day, and leave in the nest but the nest-Egge, and no more; and that would ever be in the afternoone, when you have seene every Hen come from her nest severally: some Hens

will by their cackling tell you when they have laid, but some will lay mute, therefore you must let your owne eye be your instructor.

Of the Capon, when to carve him.

Now touching the Capon, which is the gueld Cock-chicken, you shall understand, that the best time to carve or gueld him, is as soone as the Dam hath left them, (if the stones be come downe) or else as soone as they begin to crow: for the art of carving it selfe, it is both common and easie, and much sooner to be learned by seeing one carved, than by any demonstration in writing.

A Capon to lead chickens.

These Capons are of two uses: the one is, to leade Chickens, Ducklings, young Turkies, Peahens, Pheasants and Partridges, which he will doe altogether, both naturally and kindly, and through largenesse of his body will brood or cover easily thirty, or thirty and five; hee will lead them forth safely, and defend them against Kites or Buzzards, better than the Hens: therefore the way to make him to take to them is, with a fine small Bryer, or else sharp Nettles at night, to beat and sting all his brest and nether parts, and then in the darke to set the Chickens under him, whose warmth taketh away his smart, he will fall much in love with them, and whensoever he proveth unkind, you must sting, or beat him againe, and this will make him he will never forsake them.

Of feeding or cramming Capons.

The other use of Capons is, to feed for the Dish, as either at the Barne-doores, with craps of corne, and the chavings of Pulse, or else in Pens in the house, by cramming them, which is the most dainty. The best way then to cram a Capon (setting all strange inventions apart) is to take Barley-meale, reasonably sifted, and mixing it with new milke, make it into a good stiffe dough; then make it into long crams, biggest in the midst, and small at both ends, and then wetting them in luke-warme milke,

milke, give the Capon a full gorgefull thereof three times a day, morning, noone, and night, and he will in a fortnight or three weeks be as fat as any man need to eat.

As for mixing their crams with sweete *Wort, Hogs greaſe*, or *Sallet Oile*, they are by experience found to breed loath in the birds, and not to feed at all, only keep this obſervation, not to give your Capon new meate untill the firſt be put over; and if you finde your Capon ſomething hard of digeſtion, then you ſhall ſift your meale finer, for the finer your meale is, the ſooner it will paſſe thorow their bodies. And thus much for the Capon. Now for their infirmities, they follow in order.

Chap. II.

Of the Pip in Poultry.

THe Pip is a white thin ſcale, growing on the tip of the tongue, and will make Poultry that they cannot feed: it is eaſie to be diſcerned, and proceedeth uenerally from drinking puddle-water, from want of water, or from eating filthy meate. The cure is, to pull off the ſcale with your naile, and then to rub the tongue with Salt. The cure.

Chap. III.

Of the roup in Poultry.

THe Roup is a filthy bile or ſwelling on the Rumpe of Poultry, and will corrupt the whole body. It is ordinarily knowne by the ſtaring and turning backewards of the feathers. The cure is, to pull away the feathers, and opening the ſore to thruſt out the Core, and then waſh the place with Salt and water, or with Brine, and it helpeth. The cure.

Chap. IIII.

Of the Fluxe in Poultry.

The Cure. THe Fluxe in Poultry commeth with eating too much moist meat. The cure is, to give them Peaſe-bran ſcalded, and it will ſtay them.

Chap. V.

Of ſtopping in the belly.

STopping in the bellies of Poultry, is contrary to the Fluxe, ſo that they cannot mute: therefore, you ſhall anoint their vents, and then give them either ſmall bits of bread, or corne ſteep'd in mans urine.

Chap. VI.

Of Lice in Poultry.

IF your Poultry be much troubled with Lice, as it is a common infirmity, proceeding from corrupt food, or want of bathing in ſand, aſhes, or ſuch like: you ſhall take *Pepper* ſmall beaten, and mixing it with warm water, waſh your Poultry therein, and it will kill all ſorts of *Vermine*.

Chap. VII.

Of ſtinging with venemous wormes.

IF your Poultry be ſtung with any venemous thing, as you may perceive by their lowring and ſwelling, you ſhall then annoint them with *Raw* and *Butter* mixt together, and it helpeth.

Chap. VIII.

Of ſore eye in Poultry.

IF your Poultry have ſore eyes, you ſhall take a leafe or two of *Grounde-ivie*, and chawing it well in your mouth, ſucke out the juyce, and ſpit it into the ſore eye, and it will moſt aſſuredly heale it, as it hath beene often tried.

Chap. IX.
Of Hens that crow.

IF your Hens crow, which is an ill signe and unnaturall, you shall pull their wings, and give her to eate either Baley scorched, or small wheat, and keepe her close from other Poultry.

Chap. X.
Of Hens that eate their Egges.

IF your Hen will eate her Egs, you shall only lay for her nest-Eg, a piece of chalke, cut like an Eg, at which oft pecking and losing her labour, she will restraine the evill.

Chap. XI.
Of keeping a Hen from sitting.

IF you would not have your Hen sit, you shall bathe her oft in cold water, and thrust a small feather thorow her nostrills.

Chap. XII.
Of making Hens lay soone and oft.

IF you feed your Hens often with toasts taken out of Ale, with Barley boild, or spelted Fitches, they will lay soone, oft, and all the Winter.

Chap. XIII.
Of making Hens leane.

BEcause fat Hens commonly either lay their Egs without shells, or at the best hand lay very small Egges, to keep them leane, and in good plight for laying, you shall mixe both their meate and water with the powder of *Tilesheards*, *Chalke*, or else *Tares*, twice or thrice a weeke.

Chap. XIIII.
Of the Crow-trodden.

IF your *Hen* be trodden with a carrion *Crow*, or *Rooke*, as oft they are, it is mortall and incurable, you ſhall know it by the ſtaring up of her feathers, and hanging of her wings, there is no way with her then, but preſently to kill her.

Chap. XV.
Of the Hen-houſe, and the Scituation.

NOw for as much as no Poultry can be kept either in health or ſafety abroad, but muſt of force be houſed, you ſhall underſtand, that your *Hen-houſe* would be large and ſpacious, with ſomwhat a high roofe, the walls ſtrong, both to keepe out theeves and vermine, the windowes upon the Sunne riſing, ſtrongly lathed, and cloſe ſhuts inward, round about the inſide of the walls upon the ground would be built large pens of three foot high, for Geeſe, Ducks, and great fowle to ſit in. Neere to the evings of the houſe would be long pearches, reaching from one ſide of the houſe to the other, on which ſhould ſit your Cocks, Hens, Capons, and Turkies, each on ſeverall pearches, as they are diſpoſed: at another ſide of the houſe, in that part which is darkeſt, over the ground-pens, would be fixed hampers full of ſtraw for neſts, in which your hens ſhall lay their egs; but when they ſit to bring forth Chickens, then let them ſit on the ground, for otherwiſe it is dangerous: let there be pins ſtricken into the walls, ſo that your Poultry may climbe to their pearches with eaſe: let the floore by no meanes be pav'd, but of earth ſmooth and eaſie: let the ſmaller fowle have a hole at one end of the houſe made to come in and out at, when they pleaſe, or elſe they will ſeeke rouſt in other

other places, and for the greater fowle the doore may be opened evening and morning; this houſe would be placed either neere ſome Kitching, Brewhouſe, or elſe ſome Kilne, where it may have aire of the fire, and be perfumed with ſmoake, which to Pullen is delightfull and wholeſome. And thus much of the Coeke, Hen, Capon, and Chicken.

Chap. XVI.

of Geeſe, their nature, choice, and how to breed them.

Geeſe are a fowle of great profit many waies: as firſt for food, next for their feathers, and laſtly, for their greaſe. They are held of *Husband-men*, to be fowle of two lives, becauſe they live both on land and water: and therefore all men muſt underſtand, that except he have either Pond or Streame, he can never keepe Geeſe well. They are ſo watchfull and carefull over themſelves, that they will prevent moſt dangers: Graſſe alſo they muſt neceſſarily have, and the worſt, and that which is the moſt uſeleſſe, is the beſt, as that which is mooriſh, rotten, and unſavoury for Cattell. To good graſſe they are a great enemy, for their dung and treading will putrifie it, and make it worſe than barren.

Now for the choice of Geeſe, the largeſt is the beſt, and the colour would be white or gray, all of one paire, for pide are not ſo profitable, and blacke are worſe: your Gander would be knaviſh and hardy, for hee will defend his Goſlings the better. The choice of Geeſe.

Now for the laying of Egges, a Gooſe beginneth to lay in the Spring, and ſhe that layeth earlieſt is ever the beſt Gooſe, for ſhe may have a ſecond hatch. Geeſe will lay twelve, and ſome ſixteene egs: ſome will lay more, but it is ſeldome, and they cannot be all well covered: Of laying Egs and ſitting.

you ſhall know when your Gooſe will lay, by her carrying of ſtraw up and downe in her mouth, and ſcattering it abroad; and you ſhall know when ſhee will ſit by her continuing on the neſt ſtill after ſhee hath laid. You muſt ſet a Gooſe upon her owne Egges, for ſhee will hardly or unkindely ſit on another Gooſes Egs, as ſome imagine, but it is not ever certaine: You ſhall in her ſtraw when you ſet her, mixe Nettle-roots, for it is good for the Goſlings: thirtie daies is the full time that a Gooſe ſitteth; but if the weather be faire and warme, ſhee will hatch three or foure daies ſooner: ever when the Gooſe riſeth from the neſt, you ſhall give her meat, as skegge Oats, and Bran ſcalded, and give her leave to bathe in the water. After ſhe hath hatch'd her Goſlings, you ſhall keepe them in the houſe ten or twelve daies, and feed them with curds, ſcalded chippings, or Barley-meale in milke knodden and broken, alſo ground Malt is exceeding good, or any bran that is ſcalded in water, milke, or tappings of drinke. After they have got a little ſtrength, you may let them goe abroad, with a keeper, five or ſixe houres in a day, and let the Dam at her pleaſure entice them into the water; then bring them in, and put them up, and thus order them till they be able to defend themſelves from Vermine. After a Goſling is a moneth or ſixe weekes old, you may put it up to feed for a greene Gooſe, and it will be perfectly fed in another moneth following: and to feed them, there is no meat better than skeg Oats boil'd, and give plenty thereof thrice a day, morning, noone, and night, with good ſtore of milke, or milke and water mix'd together to drinke.

The ordering of Goſlings.

Of greene Geeſe, and their fatting.

Of Ganders.

Now you ſhall underſtand, one Gander will ſerve wel five Geeſe, and to have not above forty Geeſe in a flocke is beſt, for to have more, is both hurtfull and troubleſome

No

Now for the fatting of elder Geese, which are those which are five or sixe moneths old, you shall understand, that after they have beene in the stubble-fields, and during the time of Harvest got into good flesh, you shall then choose out such Geese as you will feed, and put them in severall pens, which are close and darke, and there feed them thrice a day with good store of Oates, or spelted Beanes, and give them to drinke water and Barley-meale mix'd together, which must evermore stand before them, this will in three weeks feed a Goose so fat as is needfull. Fatting of elder Geese.

Now lastly, for the gathering of a Gooses feathers, you shall understand, that howsoever some Writers advise you for a needlesse profit to pull your Goose twice a yeere, *March* and *August*; yet certainly it is very naught and ill: for, first, by disabling the flight of the Goose, you make her subject to the cruelty of the Foxe, and other ravenous Beasts; and by unclothing her in Winter, you strike that cold into her body, which kills her very suddenly, therefore it is best to stay till moulting time, or till you kill her, and then you may imploy all her feathers at your pleasure, either for Beds, Fletchers, or Scriveners. Of gathering Geese feathers.

For the diseases and infirmities in Geese, the most and worst they are subject unto, is the *Gargill*; which is a mortall or deadly stopping of the head. And the ordinary and certaine cure is, to take three or foure cloves of *Garlicke*, and beating them in a Mortar with sweet *Butter*, make little long balls thereof, and give two or three of them to the Goose fasting, and then shut her up for two houres after. Of the Gargill in Geese. The cure.

CHAP.

Chap. XVII.

Of Turkies, their nature, use, increase, and breeding.

Turkies, howsoever by some Writers, they are held devourers of corne, straiers abroad, ever puling for meat, and many such like fained troubles, as if they were utterly unprofitable, yet it is certaine they are most delicate, either in paste, or from the spit, and being fat, farre exceeding any other house-fowle whatsoever; nay, they are kept with more ease, and lesse cost: for they will take more paines for their food than any other bird, onely they are enemies to a Garden, and from thence must ever be kept. They are when they are young very tender to bring up, both because they have a straying nature in themselves, and the Dams are so negligent, that whilest she hath one following her, she never respecteth the rest: Therefore they must have a vigilant keeper to attend them, till they can shift for themselves, and then they will flocke together, and seldome be parted. Till you fat them, you need not take care for food for them; they love to roust in trees, or other high places.

Of the choice of the Turkie-Cocke.

Now for your choice of such as you would breed on; your Turkie-cocke would not be above two yeeres old at most, be sure that hee be loving to the Chickens, and for your hen, shee will lay till she be five yeeres old and upward. Your Turkie-cocke would be a bird large, stout, proud, and majesticall, for when hee walketh dejected, he is never good breeder.

Of the Turkie-hen her sitting.

The Turkie-hen, if shee be not prevented, will lay abroad in secret places, therefore you must watch her, and bring her into your *Hen-house*, and there compell her to lay. They begin to lay in *March*, and will sit in *April*, and eleven Egs or thirteene is the most they should cover:

cover; they hatch ever betweene five and twenty, and thirty daies. When they have hatch'd their broods, be ſure to keepe the chicks warme, for the leaſt colds kills them, and feed them either with curds, or greene freſh cheeſe cut in ſmall pieces. Let their drinke be new milke, or milke and water; you muſt be carefull to feed them oft; for the Turkie-hen will not like the houſe-hen, call her chickens to feed them. When your chicks have got ſtrength, you ſhall feed them abroad in ſome cloſe walled graſſe-plat, where they cannot ſtray, or elſe ever be at charge of a keeper. The dew is moſt hurtfull unto them, therefore you muſt houſe them at night, and let them abroad after Sunne riſe in the morning.

Now for the fatting of Turkies, ſodden Barley is excellent, or ſodden oats for the firſt fortnight, and then for another fortnight, cram them in all ſorts as you cram your Capon, and they will be fat beyond meaſure. Now for their infirmities: when they are at liberty, they are ſuch good phyſicians for themſelves, that they will never trouble their owners, but being coop'd up, you muſt cure them as is before preſcribed for Pullen. Their Egs are exceeding wholeſome to eate, and reſtore nature decayed wonderfully. Of feeding Turkies.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Ducke, and ſuch water-fowles.

THe tame Ducke is an exceeding neceſſary fowle for the *Husbandmans* yard, for ſhee asketh no charge in keeping, but liveth of corne loſt, or other things of leſſe profit. She is once in a yeere a very great layer of Egges, and when ſhe ſitteth ſhee craves both attendance and feeding: for being reſtrained from ſeeking her food, ſhe muſt be helped with a little Barley, or other ouer-cha-

ving

ving of corne, ſuch as elſe you would give unto Swine, as for her ſitting, hatching and feeding of her Ducklings, it is in all points to be obſerved in ſuch manner as you did before with the Gooſe, onely after they are abroad they will ſhift better for their food than Goſlings will: For the fatting of Duckes or Ducklings, you may doe it in three weekes, by giving them any kinde of Pulſe or Graine, and good ſtore of water.

Of wild Ducks and their ordering.

If you will preſerve wilde-Duckes, you muſt wall in a little piece of ground, in which is ſome little Pond or Spring, and cover the top of it all over with a ſtrong Net, the Pond muſt be ſet with many tufts of Oziers, and have many ſecret holes and creeks in, for that will make them delight and feed, though impriſoned. The wilde-Ducke when ſhe laieth, will ſteale from the Drake, and hide her neſt, for elſe he will ſucke the Egges. When ſhe hath hatch'd, ſhe is moſt carefull to nouriſh them, and needeth no attendance more than meat, which would be given freſh twice a day: as ſcalded Bran, Oats, or Fitches. The houſe-hen will hatch wild-ducks egs, and the meat will be much the better, yet every time they go into the water, they are in danger of the Kite, becauſe the Hen cannot guard them, in the ſame manner as you nouriſh wilde-Ducks, ſo you may nouriſh Teiles, Widgens Sheldrakes, or green Plovers.

Chap. XIX.

Of Swans, and their feeding.

TO ſpeake of the breeding of Swans is needleſſe, becauſe they can better order themſelves in that buſineſſe than any man can direct them, onely where they build their neſts, you ſhall ſuffer them to remaine undiſturbed, and it will be ſufficient: but for the feeding of them

them fat for the dish, you shall feed your Cygnets in all sorts as you feed your Geese, and they will be thorow fat in seven or eight weekes, either coop'd up in the house, or else walking abroad in some private Court; but if you would have them fat in shorter space, then you shall feed them in some pond, hedg'd or pail'd in for the purpose, having a little dry ground left where they may sit and prune themselves, and you may place two troughes, one full of Barley and water, the other full of old dri'd Malt, on which they may feed at their pleasure, and thus doing, they will be fat in lesse than foure weeks: for by this meanes a Swan keepeth himselfe neate and cleane, who being a much defiled Bird, liveth in dry places so uncleanly, that they cannot prosper, unlesse his attender be diligent to dresse and trim his walke every houre.

Chap. XX.

Of the Peacocke, and Peahen, their increase and ordering.

Peacockes, howsoever our old Writers are pleas'd to deceive themselves in their praises, are birds more to delight the eye by looking on them, than for any particular profit; the best commodity rising from them, being the cleansing and keeping of the yard free from venemous things; as Toades, Newtes, and such like, which is their daily food: whence is comes, that their flesh is very unwholesome, and used in great banquets more for the rarenesse, than the nourishment, for it is most certaine; roast a Peacocke or Peahen never so drie, then set it up, and looke on it the next day, and it will be bloodrawe, as if it had not beene rosted at all.

The Peahen loves to lay her Egges abroad in bushes and hedges, where the Cocke may not finde them, for if he doe, he will breake them, therefore as soone as she begins

gins to lay, ſeparate her from the Cocke, and houſe her till ſhe have brought forth her young, and that the cronet of feathers begin to riſe at their foreheads, and then turne them abroad, and the Cocke will love them, but not before. A Peahen ſits juſt thirty daies, and in her ſitting any graine, with water, is food good enough: before your Chickens goe abroad, you ſhall feed them with freſh greene Cheeſe, and Barley-meale, with water; but after they goe abroad, the Dam will provide for them. The beſt time to ſet a Peahen, is at the beginning of the Moone, and if you ſet Hen-egs amongſt her egs, ſhe will nourish both equally. Theſe Pea-chickens are very tender, and the leaſt cold doth kill them: therefore you muſt have care to keepe them warme, and not to let them goe abroad, but when the Sun ſhineth. Now for the feeding of them, it is a labour you may well ſave, for if they goe in a place where there is any corne ſtirring, they will have part, and being meate which is ſeldome or never eaten, it mattereth not ſo much for their fatting. ¶

Chap. XXI.

Of the tame Pigeon, or rough-footed.

THe tame rough-footed Pigeon differs not much from the wilde Pigeon, onely they are ſomewhat bigger and more familiar, and apt to be tame; they commonly bring not forth above one paire of Pigeons at a time, and thoſe which are the leaſt of body, are ever the beſt breeders. They muſt have their roomes and boxes made cleane once a weeke; for they delight much in neatneſſe, and if the walls be outwardly whited or painted, they love it the better; for they delight much in faire buildings. They will bring forth their young ones once a moneth, if they be well fed, and after they be well pair'd

pair'd, they will never be divided. The Cocke is a very loving and naturall bird, both to his Hen and yong ones, and will ſit the egs whileſt the Hen feedeth, as the Hen ſits whileſt he feedeth: he will alſo feed the young with as much painfulneſſe as the Dam doth, and is beſt pleaſed when he is brooding them. Theſe kind of Pigeons you ſhall feed with white Peaſe, Tares, and good ſtore of cleane water. In the roome where they lodge, you ſhall ever have a ſalt Cat for them to peck on, and that which is gathered from Saltpeter is the beſt: alſo they would have good ſtore of drie Sand, Gravell and Pibble, to bathe and cleanſe themſelves withall, and above all things great care taken, that no Vermine, or other Birds come into their boxes, eſpecially Sterlings, and ſuch like, which are great Eg-ſuckers. And thus much of the tame Pigeons.

Chap. XXII.

Of nouriſhing and fatting Hearnes, Puets, Gulls, and Bitters.

HEarnes are nouriſhed for two cauſes; either for Princes ſports, to make traines for the entring their Hawkes, or elſe to furniſh out the Table at great feaſts: the manner of bringing them up with leaſt charge, is to take them out of their neſts before they can flie, and put them into a large high Barne, where there is many high and croſſe beames for them to pearch on: then to have on the floore divers ſquare boords with rings in them, and betweene every boord, which would be two yards ſquare, to place round ſhallow tubs full of water; then to the boords you ſhall tie great gobbets of dogs fleſh, cut from the bones, according to the number which you feed: and be ſure to keepe the houſe ſweet, and ſhift the water oft, onely the houſe muſt be made ſo, that it may raine

raine in now and then, in which the Hearne will take much delight. But if you feed her for the diſh, then you ſhall feed them with Livers, and the Intralls of Beaſts, and ſuch like, cut in great gobbets, and this manner of feeding will alſo feed either Gull, Puet, or Bittern: but the Bittern is ever beſt to be fed by the hand, becauſe when you have fed him, you may tie his beake together, or he will caſt up his meat againe.

Chap. XXIII.

Of feeding the Partridge, Pheſant and Quaile.

THeſe three are the moſt daintieſt of all other birds, and for the Pheſant or Partridge you may feed them both in one roome, where you may have little boxes where they may run and hide themſelves in divers corners of the roome; then in the midſt, you ſhall have three wheat-ſheaves, two with their eares upward, and one with the eares downward, and neere unto them ſhallow Tubs with water, that the Fowle may pecke the wheat out of the eares, and drinke at their pleaſures, and by this manner of feeding, you ſhall have them as fat as is poſſible: as for your Quailes, the beſt feeding them, is in long flat ſhallow boxes, each boxe able to hold two or three dozen, the formoſt ſide being ſet with round pins, ſo thick, that the Quaile may do no more but put out her head, then before that open ſide, ſhall ſtand one trough full of ſmall chilter-wheat, and another with water, and thus in one fortnight or three weekes you ſhall have them exceeding fat.

Chap. XXIIII.

Of Godwits, Knots, gray Plovers, or Curlewes.

FOr to feed any of theſe Fowles, which are eſteemed of all other the daintieſt and deareſt, fine chilter-wheat

wheat and water given them thrice a day, morning, noone, and night, will doe it very effectually, but if you intend to have them extraordinary and crammed fowle, then you ſhall take the fineſt dreſt wheat-meale, and mixing it with milke, make it into paſte, and ever as you knead it, ſprinkle into it the graines of ſmall chilter-wheat, till the paſte be fully mix'd therewith; then make little ſmall crams thereof, and dipping them in water, give to every fowle according to his bigneſſe, and that his gorge be well filled: doe thus as oft as you ſhall find their gorges empty, and in one fortnight they will be fed beyond meaſure. And with theſe crams you may feed any fowle, of what kind or nature ſoever.

Chap. XXV.

Of feeding of Blacke-birds, Thruſhes, Felfares, or any ſmall Birds whatſoever.

TO feed theſe Birds, being taken old and wilde, it is good to have ſome of their kindes tame to mixe among them, and then putting them into great Cages of three or foure yards ſquare, to have divers troughes placed therein, ſome filled with Hips and Hawes, ſome with Hempe-ſeed, ſome with Rape-ſeed, ſome with Lin-ſeed, and ſome with water, that the tame teaching the wilde to eate, and the wild finding ſuch change and alteration of food, they will in twelve or fourteene daies grow exceeding fat and fit for the uſe of the Kitching.

The end of the Poultry.

Of Hawkes.

Chap. I.

Of the generall Cures for all Diſeaſes and Infirmities in Hawks, whether they be ſhort-wing'd Hawks, or long-wing'd Hawks: and firſt of Caſtings.

HAwkes are divided into two kinds, that is to ſay, ſhort-wing'd *Hawks*; as the *Goſ-Hawke* and her *Tercell*, the *Sparrow-Hawke* and her *Muſket*, and ſuch like, whoſe wings are ſhorter than their traines, and doe belong to the *Oſtringer*: and long-wing'd *Hawkes*; as the *Faulcon-gentle*, and her *Tercell*, the *Gerfaulcon* and *Ierkin*, the *Lanner*, *Merlin*, *Hobby*, and divers others, which belong unto *Faulconers*. Now for as much as their infirmities, for the moſt part, proceed from the indiſcretion of their governours, if they flie them out of ſeaſon, before they be inſeamed, and have the fat, glut, and filthineſſe of their bodies ſcoured and cleanſed out, I thinke it not amiſſe, firſt to ſpeake of *Hawks Caſtings*, which are the naturalleſt and gentleſt purges or ſcourings a *Hawke* can take, and doth the leaſt offend the vitall parts. Therefore you ſhall know, that all *Oſtringers* do eſteeme plumage, and the ſoft feathers of ſmall birds, with ſome part of the skin, to be the beſt caſting a ſhort-wing'd *Hawke* can take; and for the purging of her head, to make her tyer much upon Sheeps rumps, the fat cut away, and the bones well covered with Parcely. But for long-wing'd *Hawkes*, the beſt caſting is fine Flannell, cut into ſquare pieces of an inch and

and a halfe ſquare, and all to jagged, and ſo given with a little bit of meat. By theſe caſtings you ſhall know the ſoundneſſe and unſoundneſſe of your *Hawke*: for when ſhe hath caſt, you ſhall take up the caſting, which will be like a hard, round pellet, ſowewhat long, and preſſe it betweene your fingers, and if you finde nothing but cleere water come from it, then it is a ſigne your *Hawke* is ſound and lufty, if there come from it a yellow or filthy matter, or if it ſtinke, it is a ſigne of rottenneſſe and diſeaſe, but if it be greaſie or ſlimie on the one ſide, then it is a ſigne the *Hawke* is full of greaſe inwardly, which is not broken nor diſſolved: and then you ſhall give her a ſcouring, which is a much ſtronger purgation, and of ſcourings the gentleſt, next caſting, is to take foure or five pellets of the yellow root of *Selladine*, well cleanſed from filth, being as bigge as great Peaſe, and give them out of water early in a morning, when the *Hawke* is faſting, and it will cleanſe her mightily. If you take theſe pellets of *Selladine*, and give them out of the oile of *Roſes*, or out of the ſirrup of *Roſes*, it is a moſt excellent ſcouring alſo, onely it will for an houre or two make the *Hawke* ſomewhat ſickiſh. If you give your *Hawke* a little *Aloes Cicotrine*, as much as a Beane wrap'd up in her meat, it is a moſt ſoveraigne ſcouring, and doth not onely avoid greaſe, but alſo killeth all ſorts of wormes whatſoever. Of ſcouring.

If your *Hawke* by over-flying, or too ſoone flying, be heated and inflamed in her body, as they are much ſubject thereunto: you ſhall then to coole their bodies, give them ſtones. Theſe ſtones are very fine white pibbles, lying in the ſands of gravelly rivers, the bigneſſe whereof you may chooſe according to the bigneſſe of your *Hawke*; as ſome no bigger than a Beane, and

those be for *Merlins* or *Hobbies*, some as bigge as two Beanes, and they are for *Faulcons gentle*, *Lanners*, and such like; and some much bigger than they, which are for *Gerfalcons*, or such like. And these Stones if they be full of creſts and welts, they are the better, for the roughest stone is the best, so it be smooth and not greety. And you shall understand that Stones are most proper for long-wing'd *Hawkes*, and the number which you shall give at the most, must never exceed fifteene, for seven is a good number, so is nine or eleven, according as you finde the *Hawke* heate, more or lesse: and these Stones must ever be given out of faire water, having beene before very well pick'd and trim'd from all dirt or filthinesse. And thus much of *Hawkes* castings, scourings, and stones.

Chap. II.

Of Impostumes in Hawkes.

IF your *Hawke* have any Impostume rising upon her, which is apparant to be seene, you shall take sweet *Raisins*, and boile them in *Wine*, and then crushing them, lay them warme to the sore, and it will both ripen and heale it: onely it shall be good to scoure your *Hawke* very well inwardly, for that will abate the Fluxe of all evill humours.

Chap. III.

Of all sorts of sore eyes.

FOr any sore eye there is nothing better than to take the juyce of *Ground-ivie*, and drop it into the eye: but if any filme or webbe be growne before you use this medicine, then you shal take *Ginger* finely scarst, and blow it into the eye, and it will breake the filme, then use the juyce of *Ivie*, and it will weare it away.

Chap.

Chap. IIII.

Of the Pantas in Hawkes.

THe Pantas is a ſtopping or ſhortneſſe of winde in *Hawkes*. And the cure is to give her the ſcouring of *Bolladius*, and the oile of *Roſes*, and then to waſh her meat in the decoction of *Colts-foot*, and it will help her. The cure.

Chap. V.

Of caſting the gorge.

THis is when a *Hawke*, either through meat which ſhe cannot diſgeſt, or through ſurfeit in feeding, caſteth up the meat which he hath eaten, which is moſt dangerous: And the only way to cure her is to keep her faſting, and to feed her with a very little at once of warme bloody meat, as not above halfe a *Sparrow* at a time, and be ſure never to feed her againe till ſhe have indued the firſt. The cure.

Chap. VI.

Of all ſorts of Wormes or Fylanders in Hawkes.

WOrmes or Fylanders, which are a kind of wormes in *Hawkes*, are either inward or outward; Inward, as in the guts or intralls, or outward, as in any joint or member: If they be inward, the ſcouring of *Aloes* is excellent to kill them, but if they be outward, then you ſhall bathe the place with the juyce of the herb *Annes* mix'd with *Honey*.

Chap. VII.

Of all ſwellings in Hawkes feet, and of the Pin in the foot.

FOr the Pin in the ſole of the *Hawkes* foot, or for any ſwelling upon the foot, whether it be ſoft or hard, there is not any thing more ſoveraigne, then to bathe it in *Patch-greaſe* molten and applyed to exceeding hot,

and then to fold a fine Cambricke rag dipt in the ſame greaſe about the ſore.

Chap. VIII.

Of the breaking of a Pounce.

THis is a very dangerous hurt in *Hawkes*, eſpecially in *Gerfolkens*, for if you ſhall breake or rive her Pounce, or but coap it ſo ſhort, that ſhe bleed, though it be very little, yet it will danger her life. The cure therfore is preſently upon the hurt, with a hot wyar to ſeare it till the blood ſtaunch, and then to drop about it *Pitch* of Burgundy, and *Waxe* mixt together, or for want thereof, a little hard Merchants *Waxe*, and that will both heale it, and make the Pounce grow. The cure.

Chap. IX.

Of bones broke, or out of joint.

IF your *Hawke*, have any bone broke or miſplaced, you ſhall after you have ſet it, bath it with the oile of *Mandrake* and *Swallowes* mixt together, and then ſplent it, and in nine daies it will be knit and have gotten ſtrength.

Chap. X.

Of inward bruiſings in hawkes.

IF your *Hawke* either by ſtooping amongſt trees, or by the incounter of ſome fowle, get any inward bruiſe, which you ſhall know by the blackneſſe or bloodineſſe of their mutes, you ſhall then anoint her meate every time you feede her with *Sperma-Cœte* till her mutes be cleare againe, and let her meat be warme and bloody.

Chap. XI.

Of killing of Lice.

IF your *Hawke* be troubled with Lice, which is a generall infirmity, and apparant, for you ſhal ſee them creep all over on the outſide of her feathers, if ſhe ſtand but in the

the aire of the fire. You shall bathe her all over in warme *Water* and *Pepper*, small beaten, but be sure that the *Water* be not too hot, for that is dangerous, neither that it touch her eyes.

Chap. XII.

Of the Rye in Hawkes.

THis disease of the Rye in *hawkes* proceedeth from two causes, the one is cold and poze in the head, the other is fowle and most uncleanly feeding, the Falkoner being negligent to feake and cleanse his *hawks* beake and nares, but suffering the blood and filthinesse of meat to sticke and cleave thereunto. For indeede, the infirmity is nothing else but a stopping of the nares, by meanes whereof the *hawke* not being able to cast and avoide the corruption of her head, it turnes to putrifaction, and in short space kills the *hawke*: and this disease is a great deale more incident to short-wing'd Hawkes then to long. The signes whereof are apparant by the stopping of the nares. The cure is, to let your Hawke eyer much upon fine wie and body meat, as the rumps of Mutton, (the fat being taken away) or the pinions of the wings of fowle, either being well lapt in a good handfull of *Parsley*, and forcing her to straine hard in the eating of the same, and with much diligence to cleanse and wash her beake cleane with water after her feeding, especially if her meate were warme and bloody. The cure.

Chap. XIII.

Of the Frounce.

THe Frounce is a canker-ous ulcer in a *Hawkes* mouth by gorby over-flying, or other inflamation proceeding from the inward parts, foule and uncleane food is also a great inducing cause of this disease. The signes are a sorenesse in the *Hawkes* mouth, which sore will be full and couered with The cure.

ver'd over with white ſcurfe or ſuch like filthineſſe; alſo if the ulcer be deepe and ill, the *Hawke* will winde and turne her head awry, making her beake ſtand upright: and the cure is to take *allome*, and having beaten it to fine powder, mixe it with ſtrong *Wine-vinegar*, till it be ſomewhat thicke, and then waſh and rub the ſore therewith, till it be raw, and that the ſcurfe be cleane taken away. Then take the juyce of *Lollium*, and the juyce of *Raddiſh*, and mixing it with *Salt*, annoint the ſore therewith, and in few daies it will cure it.

The cure.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Rhume.

THe Rhume is a continuall running or dropping at the *hawkes* nares, proceeding from a generall cold, or elſe from over-flying, and then a ſudden cold taken thereupon ſtops the head, and breeds much corruption therein, and the ſignes are the dropping beforeſaid, and a generall heavineſſe, and ſometimes a ſwelling of the head. The cure is, to take the juyce of *Rew*, and ſquirt it often into the *hawkes* nares. Then when you feed her, waſh her meat in the juyce of *Brownwort*, and it will quickly purge and ſet her ſound.

The cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Formicas in hawkes.

THe Formicas in *Hawkes*, is a hard horne growing upon the beake of a *hawke*, ingendred by a poiſonous and cankerous worme, which eating the skin and tender yellow web between the head and the beake, cauſeth that hard horne or excreſſion to grow and offend the bird. The ſigne is the apparant ſight of the horne. And the cure is, to take a little of a Bulls *gall*, and beating it with *aloes*, annoint the *hawkes* beake therewith morn-

The cure.

ning and evening, and it will in very few dales take the horne away.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Fistula in hawkes.

THe Fistula in *hawkes*, is a cankerous hollow ulcer in any part of a *hawkes* body, as it is in men, beasts, or any other creature: the signes are a continuall mattering or running of the sore, and a thin sharpe water like lie, which as it falls from the same, will fret the sound parts as it goeth. The cure is, with a fine small wyar, little stronger than a Virginall-wyar, and wrapt close about with a soft sleaved silke, and the point blunt and soft, to search the hollownesse and crookednesse of the ulcer, which the pliantnesse of the wyar will easily do, and then having found out the bottome thereof, draw forth the wyar, and according to the bignesse of the Orifice, make a tent of fine Lint being wet, which may likewise bend as the wyar did, and be within a very little as long as the ulcer is deep, for to tent it to the full length is ill, and will rather increase than diminish the Fistula: and therefore ever as the Fistula heales, you must take the tent shorter and shorter. But to the purpose; when you have made your tent fit, you shall first take strong *Allum* water, and with a small Syringe, squirt the sore three or foure times therewith, for that will cleanse, dry, and scoure every hollownesse in the ulcer: then take the tent, and annoint it with the juyce of the herbe *Roberts*, *Vinegar*, and *Allum* mixed together, and it will dry up the sore. The Cure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the privie evill in hawkes.

THe privie evill in *hawkes* is a secret heart-sickenesse, procured either by over-flying, corrupt food, cold,

or other disorderly keeping, but most especially for want of Stones, or casting in the due season: the signes are heavinesse of head and countenance, evill enduing of her meat, and foule blacke mutings. The cure is, to take morning and evening a good piece of a warme *Sheep* heart, and stooping it either in new *Ales* milke, or new *Goats* milke, or for want of both, the new milke of a red *Cow*, with the same to feed your *Hawke* til you see her strength and lust recovered.

The cure.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of wounds in *Hawkes*.

Hawkes by the crosse incounters of fowles, especially the *Heron*, by stooping amongst bushes, thornes, trees, and by divers such accidents, doe many times catch sore and most grievous wounds: the signes whereof are the outward apparance of the same. And the cure is, if they be long and deepe, and in places that you may convemently first to stitch them up, and then to taint them up with a little ordinary *Balsamum*, and it is a present remedy. But if it be in such a place as you cannot come to stitch it up, you shall then onely take a little *Lint*, and din it in the juyce of the herbe called *Monsecre*, and apply it to the sore, and it will in short space heale it. But if it be in such a place, as you can by no meanes bind any thing thereunto, you shall then onely annoint or bathe the place with the aforesaid juyce, and it will heale and dry up the same in very short time: the juyce of the greene herbe, called with us, *English Tobacco*, will likewise doe the same: for it hath a very speedy course in healing and cleansing, as hath beene approved by divers of the best Falconers of this Kingdome, and other Nations.

The cure.

Chap. XIX.

Of the Apoplexie, or falling evill in Hawkes.

THe Apoplexy or Falling evill in *Hawkes*, is a certaine *Vertigo* or dizzineſſe of the braine, proceeding from the oppreſſion of cold humors, which doe for a certaine ſpace numb, and as it were, mortifie the ſenſes: the ſignes are a ſudden turning up the *Hawkes* head, and falling from her perch without baring, but onely with a generall trembling over all the body, and lying ſo, as it were, in a trance a little ſpace, ſhe preſently recovereth, and riſeth up againe, but is ſick and heavie many houres after. The cure therefore is, to gather the herbe *Aſarion*, when the Moone is in the waine, and in the ſigne *Virgo*, and taking the juyce thereof to waſh your *Hawkes* meate therein, and ſo feed her, and it hath beene found a moſt ſoveraigne medicine. The cure.

Chap. XX.

Of the purging of Hawkes.

THere is nothing more needfull to *Hawkes*, than purgations and cleanſings, for they are much ſubject to fat and fouleneſſe of body inwardly, and their exerciſe being much and violent, if there be neglect, and that their glut be not taken away, it will breed ſickneſſe and death; therefore it is the part of every skilfull Faulconer to underſtand how, and when to purge his *Hawke*, which is generally ever before ſhee be brought to flying: and the moſt uſualleſt ſeaſon for the ſame, is, before the beginning of *Autumne*, for commonly knowing Gentlemen will not fly at the *Partridge* till Corne be from the ground; and if he prepare for the River early, hee will likewiſe beginne about that ſeaſon: the beſt purgation then that you can give your *Hawke*, is *Aloes Cicatrina*, wrap'd up in warme meate, the quantitie of a French

Peaſe,

Peafe, and ſo given the *Hawke*, to eat ever the next morning after ſhe hath flowne at any traine, or taken other exerciſe, whereby ſhe might breake or diſſolve the greaſe within her.

CHAP. XXI.

For a Hawke that cannot mute.

IF your *Hawke* cannot mute, as it is a common infirmity which happeneth unto them; you ſhall take the leafe of Porke being newly kild, whileſt it is warme, to the quantity of two *Wall nuts*, and lapping a little *Aloes* therein, give it to the *Hawke* to eate, and it will preſently help her. There be divers good Faulkoners, in this caſe, which will take the roots of *Sellandine*, and having cleanſed it, cut it into little ſquare pieces as big as Peaſe, ſteepe it in the nile of *Roſes*, and ſo make the *Hawke* ſwallow downe three or foure of them; and ſure this is very good and wholeſome, only it will make the *Hawke* exceeding ſicke for two or three houres after. Neither muſt the *Hawke* be in any wrake ſtate of body, when this later medicine is given her. Alſo you muſt obſerve to keepe your *Hawke* at thoſe times exceeding warme, and much on your fiſt, and to feed her moſt with warme birds, leſt otherwiſe you clung and dry up her intralls too much, which is both dangerous and mortall.

CHAP. XXII.

The eſſentiall ſigne to know when a Hawke is ſicke.

HAwkes are generally of ſuch a ſtout, ſtrong, and unyeelding nature, that they will many times cover and conceale their ſickneſſes ſo long till they be growne to that extremity, that no helpe of Phyſicke or other knowledge can availe for their ſafeties: for when the countenance, or decay of ſtomach, which are the ordi-

nary

nary outward faces of infirmities, appeare, then commonly is the disease past remedy: therefore to prevent that evill, and to know sickneſſe whileſt it may be cured, you ſhall take your Hawke, and curbing up her traine, if you ſee that her tuell or fundament either ſweller or looke red, or if her eyes or nares likewiſe be of a fiery complexion, it is a moſt infallible ſigne that the Hawke is ſicke, and out of temper.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Feuer in Hawkes.

The cure.

HAwkes are as much ſubject to Feuers, as any creatures whatſoever, and for the moſt part they procede from ouer-flying, or other extraordinary heate, and with ſhiuering colde, giuen them by the negligence of unskilfull keepers, and the cure is to ſet her in a coole The Cure. place, upon a pearch wrapt about with wet clothes, and feed her oft with a little at a time of Chickens fleſh, ſteeped in water, wherein hath beene ſoaked *Cowcumber-ſeeds*. But if you finde by the ſtopping of her nares or head, that ſhe is offended more with colde than heate, then you ſhall ſet her in a warme place, and feed her with the blood dry fleſh of Pigeons, ſoaked after in white wine, or in water, wherein hath beene boyled either *Borage*, *Buglaſſe*, or *Cowſlippe flowers*.

CHAP. XXIIII.

To helpe a Hawke that cannot digeſt her meate.

IF your Hawke be taken of digeſtion, and ſhe either cannot caſt ouer, nor emptie her panel, which is very often ſeene, you ſhall then take the heart of a Frog, and thruſt it downe her throat, and pull it backe againe by a thread faſtened thereunto once or twice ſuddenly, and it will either make her ſhiuer or caſt her gorge preſently.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Gout in Hawkes.

HAwkes, especially those which are free and strong strikers, are infinitely subject to the Gout, which is a swelling, & nouring, and contracting of a Hawkes feet. The cure thereof is, to take two or three drops of blood from her thigh-veine, a little above her knee, and then annoint her feet with the juyce of the herbe *Hollyhocke*, and let all her pearch be annointed also with *Tallow*, and the juyce of that herbe mixt together. Now, if this disease (as oft it happeneth) be in a *Hawkes* wing, then you shall take two or three drops of blood from the veine under her wing, and then annoint the pinions and inside thereof with *Sugar-candy dissolved* made very warme, which you may buy of every *Poulterer*.

The cure.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the stanching of blood.

IT is a knowne experience amongst the best Faulconers, that if the *Gerfalcon* shall but lose two or three drops of blood, it is mortall, and the *Hawke* will die suddenly after, which commeneth, if the blood proceed from any wounde, which is out of sight, then upon the instant hurt, you shall take a little hard Merchants waxe, and drop it upon the sore, and it will presently stop it; if it be upon any other part of the *Hawkes* body, you shall clap thereunto a little of the soft Down of a *Hare*, and it will immediately stanch it, and without these two things a good Faulconer should never goe, for they are to be tied in a moment. And thus much of the *Hawke*, and her diseases.

The end of the Hawke.

Of

Of Bees.

Chap. I.

Of the nature, ordering, and preservation of Bees.

OF all the creatures which are behoovefull for the use of man, there is none more necessary, wholesome, or more profitable than the Bee, nor any lesse troublesome, or lesse chargeable. To speake then first of the nature of Bees, it is a creature gentle, loving, and familiar about the man, which hath the ordering of them, so he come neat, sweet and cleanly amongst them: otherwise, if he have strong and ill-smelling savors about him, they are curst and malicious, and will sting spitefully: they are exceeding industrious, and much given to labour, they have a kinde of government amongst themselves, as it were a well ordered common-wealth: every one obeying and following their king or commander, whose voyce (if you lay your eare to the hive) you shall distinguish from the rest, being louder and greater, and bearing with a more solemne measure. They delight to live amongst the sweetest herbs & flowers that may be; especially *Pennel*, and wall *Gilly flowers*, and therfore their best dwellings are in *gardens*: and in these *gardens*, or neer adjoyning thereunto, would be divers fruit-trees growing, chiefly *Plumb-trees*, or *Peach-trees*, in which, when they cast, they may knit, without taking any farre flight, or wandring to find out their rest: this *Garden* also would be well fenced, that no Swine nor other cattel may come therein, as well for overthrowing their hives, as also for offen-

The nature of Bees.

offending them with other ill-favours. They are also very sensible of wet by raine, and the least cold; therefore you must have a great respect to have their houses exceeding warme, close, and tight, both to keepe out the frosts and snowes, as also the wet and raine; which if it once enter into the hive, it is a present destruction.

Of the Bee-hive.

To speake more of the Bee-hive, you shall know there be divers opinions touching the same, according to the customes and natures of Countries; for in the Champaine Countries, where there is very little store of woods, they make their hives of long Rie-straw, the rolls being sowed together with Brears, and these hives are large and deepe, and even proportioned like a *Sugar-loafe*, and crosse-barr'd within, with flat splints of wood, both above, and under the middest part: in other Champaine Countries, where there wanteth Rie-straw, they make them of Wheat-straw, as in the West Countries, and these hives are of a good compasse, but very low and flat, which is naught: for a hive is ever better for his largenesse, and keepeth out raine best, when it is sharpest. In the wood countries, they make them of cloven hasells, watteld about, broad splints of Ashe, and so formed as before I said, like a *Sugar loafe*. And these hives are of all other the best, so they be large and smooth within, for the straw-hive is subject to breed Mice, and nothing destroyeth Bees sooner than they, yet you must be governed by your ability, and such things as the soyle affords.

Of the trimming of the hive.

Now for the Wood-hive, which is the best, you shall thus trim and prepare it for your Bees: you shall first make a fine morter of Lime and Cow-dung, mixed together; and then having crosse-barr'd the hive within, daube the out-side of the hive with the morter, at least

least three inches thicke, downe close unto the stone, so that the least aire may not come in: then taking a Rye-sheafe, or Wheate-sheafe or two that is baired and not thrashed, and chusing out the longest Strawes, bind the eares together in one tuffe, put it over the Hive, and so as it were thatch it all over, and fixe it close to the Hive with an old hoope or garth, and this will keepe the Hive inwardly as warme as may be: also before you lodge any Bee in your hive, you shall perfume it with *Frankin-cense*, and rub it all within with *Fennell*, *Hyssop*, and *Time-flowers*, and also all the stone upon which the Hive shall stand.

Now for the placing of your Hives, you shall take three long thick stakes, cut smooth and plaine upon the heads, and drive them into the earth triangular wise, so that they may bee about two foot above the ground: then lay over them a broad smooth paving stone, which may extend every way over the stakes about halfe a foot, and upon the stone set your Hive, being fleet in compasse then the stone by more than five inches every way, and see the doore of your Hive stand directly upon the rising of the Morning Sunne, inclining a little unto the South-ward: and bee sure to have your Hives well sheltred from the North-winde, and generally from all tempestuous weather: for which purpose if you have sheads to draw over them in the winter, it is so much the better. And you shall place your hives in orderly rowes: one before another, keeping cleane Alleyes between them every way, so as you may walke and view each by it selfe severally. The placing of Hives.

Now for the casting of your Bees, it is earlyer or later in the yeare, according to the strength & goodnesse of the stocke, or the warmth of the weather. The usuall time for casting, is from the beginning of May, till the The casting of Bees, and ordering of swarms.

middle of July: and in all that time you must have a vigilant eye, or els some seruant to watch their rising, least they fly away, and knit in some obscure place farre from your knowledge. Yet if you please you may know which Hiues are ready to cast a night before they doe cast, by laying your eare after the Sunne set to the Hiue, and if you heare the Master Bee aboue all the rest, in a higher and more solemne note, or if you see them lie forth upon the stone, and cannot get into the Hiue, then be sure that stocke will cast within few houres after.

As soone as you can perceiue the swarme to rise, and are got vp into the ayre (which will commonly be in the height and heat of the Sun) you shall take a Brasse Bason, Pan or candlesticke, and making a tinkling noise thereupon, and they are so delighted with Musicke, that by the sound thereof, they will presently knit vpon some branch or bough of a tree. Then when they are all vpon one cluster, you shall take a new sweet Hiue well dreft, and rub'd with *Honey* and *Fennel*, and shake them all into the Hiue, then hauing spread a faire sheet (vpon the ground) set the hiue thereon, and couer it all cleane ouer close with the sheet, and so let it stand till after Sunne set, at which time the Bees being gathered vp to the top of the hiue (as their nature is) you shal set them vpon the stone, hauing rub'd it well with *Fennel*, and then daube it close round about with *Lime* and *Dung* mixt together, and only leave them a doore or two to issue out and in at. There be some stockes that will cast twice or thrice, and foure times in a yeare, but it is not so good, for it will weaken the stocke too much, therefore to keepe your stockes in strength and goodnesse, it is good not to suffer any to cast aboue twice at the most.

Againe, you shal with peeces of Brick or other smooth stones,

ſtones, raiſe the ſtocke in the night three or foure inches above the ſtone, and then daube in cloſe againe, and the Bees finding houſe-roome will fall to worke within, and not caſt at all; and then will that ſtocke bee worth two others: and in the ſame manner, if you had the yeare before any ſmall ſwarmes, which are likely to caſt this yeare; or if you haue any early ſwarmes this yeare, which are likely to caſt at the latter end of the yeare, both which are often found to be the deſtruction of the ſtockes; in either of theſe caſes, you ſhall inlarge the Hive as it is before ſaid, by raiſing it up from the ſtone, and it will not onely keepe them from caſting, but make the ſtocke better, and of much more profit, for that Hive ever which is of the moſt weight is of the beſt price.

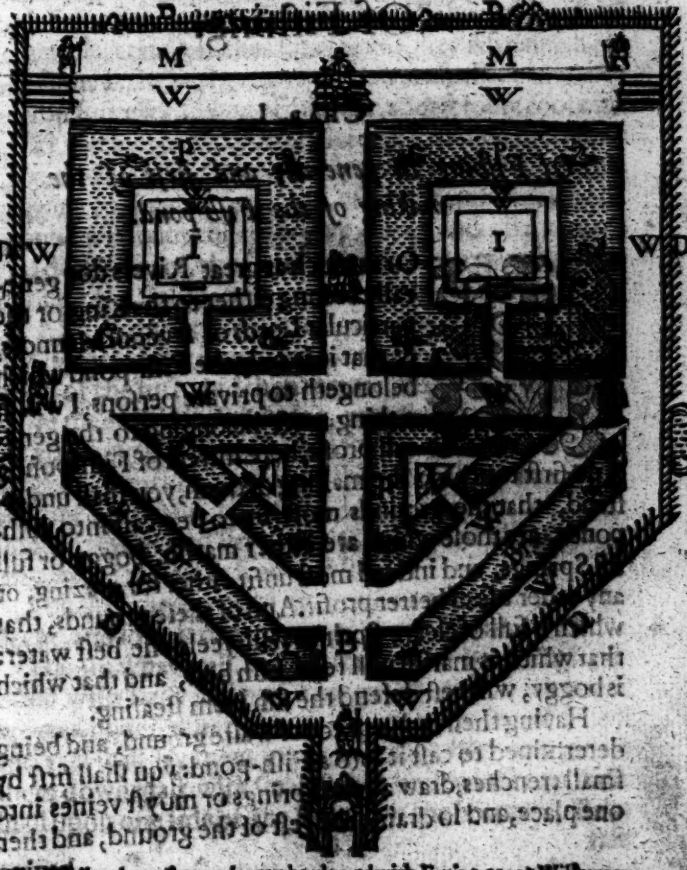
Now when you haue marked out thoſe old ſtockes which you intend to ſell, (for the oldeſt is fitteſt for that purpoſe) you ſhall know that the beſt time to take them, is at *Michaelmas*, before any froſts hinder their labour: and you ſhall take them ever from the ſtone in the darke of night, when the aire is cold, and either drowne them in water, or ſmother them with Fuſballs, for to chaſe them from their Hives, as ſome doe is naught, becauſe all ſuch Bees as are thus frighted from their Hives doe turne robbers and ſpoyle other ſtocks, becauſe that time of the yeare will not ſuffer them to labour and get their owne livings. Of ſelling hives.

Now, if you haue any weake ſwarmes which comming late in the yeare cannot gather ſufficient of Winter proviſion; in this caſe, you ſhall feede ſuch ſtockes by daily ſmearing their ſtone before the place of their going in and out with Hony and Roſe-water mixt together. and ſo you ſhall continue to doe all the ſtrength of the Winter, till the warmth of the Spring, & the Sun ſhine bring The preſervation of weake ſtocks.

forth of Flowers for them to labour upon. You ſhall continually looke that no Mice, Dares, and ſuch like vermine breed about hives, for they are poyſonous, and wil make Bees forſake their hives.

Now laſtly, if any of your ſtockes happen to dye in the Winter (as amongſt many, ſome muſt quaile) you ſhall not by any meanes ſtirre the ſtocke, but let it remaine till the Spring, that you ſee your Bees beginne to grow buſie; then take up the dead ſtocke, and trimme it cleane from all filth, but by no meanes ſtirre or cruſh any of the Combes: then daſh the Combes, and beſprinkle them, and beſmeare all the inſide of the hive with hony, roſe-water, and the juyce of fennell, mixt together, and daube all the ſtone therewith. Alſo then ſet downe the hive againe, and daube it, as if it had never beene ſtirred, and bee well aſſured that the firſt Swarme which ſhall riſe, either of your owne, or of any Neighbour of yours within the compaſſe of a mile, is will knit in no place, but within that hive, and ſuch a ſtocke will bee worth five others, becauſe they finde halfe their worke finiſht at their firſt entrance into the hive, and this hath been many times approved by thoſe of the moſt approoveſt experience. And thus much touching the Bee and his Nature.

A Platforme for Ponds, which the Printer hath added to this ensuing discourse, for the better satisfaction and delight of such as having a convenient plot of ground for the same purpose shall be desirous to make any Ponds for the increase and store of Fish.



G. The Gate.

D. The Ditch and Quick set hedge.

W. The Walkes.

B. The Bridge.

Br. The Brooke.

P. The Ponds.

I. The Penifes.

M. The Mount.

S. The Spring head.

The Walkes about the ponds may be planted with Fruit-trees or Willowes.

Of Fishing.

Chap. I.

Of Fishing in generall, and first of the making of the Fish-pond.

FOr as much as great Rivers doe generally belong either to the King, or the particular Lords of severall Mannors, & that it is only the Fish-pond which belongeth to private persons, I will as a thing most belonging to the generall profit, here intreat of Fish-ponds. And first touching the making of them, you shall understand, that the grounds most fit to bee cast into Fish-ponds, are those which are either marish, boggy or full of Springs, and indeed most unfit either for grazing, or any other use of better profit: And of these grounds, that which is full of cleare Springs will yeeld the best water: that which is marish will feed Fish best, and that which is boggy, will best defend the fish from stealing.

Having then such a peece of waste ground, and being determined to cast it into a Fish-pond: you shall first by small trenches, draw all the Springs or moyst veines into one place, and so drain the rest of the ground, and then having

having mark't out that part which you meane to make the head of your pond, which although it bee the loweſt part in the true levell of the ground, yet you muſt take it the higheſt in the eye; you ſhall firſt cut the trench of your Floud-gate, ſo as the water may have a ſwift fall, when you meane at any time to let it out; and then on each ſide of the trench drive in great ſtakes of ſixe foot in length, and ſix inches ſquare, of Oke, Aſh, or Elme, but Elme is the beſt: and theſe you muſt drive in rowes within foure foote one of another, at leaſt foure foote into the earth, as broad, and as farre off each ſide the Floud gate, as you intend the head of your Pond ſhall goe: then beginne to digge your Pond of ſuch compaſſe as your ground will conveniently give leave, and all the earth you digge out of the Pond, you ſhall carry and throw amongſt the ſtakes, and with ſtrong rammers ram the earth hard betweene them till you have covered all the ſtakes; then drive in as many moe new ſtakes beſides the heads of the firſt, and then ramme more earth over and above them alſo; and thus doe, with ſtakes above ſtakes, till you have brought the head ſides to ſuch a convenient height as is fitting. And in all this worke have an eſpeciall care that you make the inſide of your bankes ſo ſmooth, even, and ſtrong, that no current of the water may weare the earth from the ſtakes.

You ſhall digge your Fiſh-Pond not above eight foot deepe, and ſo as it may carry not above ſixe foot water.

You ſhall pave all the bottome, and bankes of the Pond with large ſods of Plot graſſe, which naturally growes under water, for it is a great feeder of Fiſh: and you ſhall lay them very cloſe together, and pinne them downe faſt with ſmall ſtakes and windings. You ſhall upon one ſide of the Pond, in the bottome, ſtake

fast divers Bavens or Faggots of brush wood, wherein your fish shall cast their spawne, for that will defend it from destruction; and at another place you shall lay sods upon sods, with the grasse sides together, in the bottome of the Pond, for that will nourish and breed Eeles, and if you sticke sharp stakes slant-wise by every side of the Pond, that will keepe theeves from robbing them. When you have thus made your Ponds, and have let in the water, you shall then store them: Carpe, Bremme and Tench by themselves: and Pike, Pearch, Eele, and Tench by themselves: for the Tench being the Fishes Physician is seldome devoured: also in all Ponds you shall put good store of Rotch, Dace, Loch and Menow, for they are both food for the greater fishes, and also not uncomely in any good mans dish. You shall to every meleer put three Spawners, and some put five, and in three yeares the increase will be great, but in five hardly to bee destroyed. And thus much for Ponds and their stockings.

Chap. III.

Of the taking of all sorts of Fish, with Nets, or otherwise.

IF you will take Fish with little or no trouble, you shall take of *Salo mastick*, a quarter of an ounce, of young Chives, as much, and as much of a Calves Kell, and bruise them in a Mortar until it bee all into substance, and then make Pellets thereof, and cast them into any corner of the Pond, and it will draw them all the Carpe, Bremme, Chevin, or Barbel, that are within the reach, that no cub yours shall ever be found them, and you shall take those at your pleasure. If you will take Eeles, Dace, or any small kind of Fish, take White Lees & anoint it with Oyle, and hang it in a Chimney corner, till it be dry, or

look

look black, and then putting it into the water, they will come so abundantly to it that you may take them with your hand. If you will take Trout, or Grailing; take two pound of wheate bran, halfe so much of white Peafe, and mixe them with ſtrong Brine, beate it till it come to a perfect paſte; then put pellets thereof into any corner of the water, and they will reſort thither, ſo as you may caſt your net about them at your pleaſure. But if you will take either Pearch or Pike, you ſhall take ſome of a beaſts Liver, blacke Snailes, yellow Butter-Flies, hogges blond, and Opoponax, beate them all together, and having made a paſte thereof, put it into the water, and bee aſſured that as many as are within forty paces thereof will preſently come thither, and you may take them at your pleaſure.

Laſtly, if you take eight drams of Cocke-ſtones, and twice ſo much of the kirnels of Pynapple trees burnt, and beate them well together, and make round balles thereof, and put it into the water, either freſh or ſalt, any Salmon or great Fiſh will preſently reſort thither: and you may take them either with net or otherwiſe.

Alſo, it is a moſt approved experiment, that if you take bottles made of hay, and greene oziers, or willow mixt together, and ſinke them downe in the midſt of your pond, or by the banckſides, and ſo let them reſt two or three dayes, having a cord ſo faſtened unto them that you may twich them upon land at your pleaſure: and beleeve it, all the good Eeles which are in the Pond will come into thoſe Bottles, and you ſhall take them moſt abundantly: and if you pleaſe to baite thoſe bottles, by binding up ſheepes guts, or other garbage of beaſts within them, the Eeles will come ſooner, & you

may

may draw them oftner, and with better aſſurance. There bee other wayes beſides theſe to take Eeles, as with Weeles, with the Eele-ſpeare, or with bobbing for them with great wormes; but they are ſo generally knowne and practiſed, and ſo much inferiour to this already ſhewed, that I hold it a needleſſe and vaine labour to trouble your eares with the repetition of the ſame; and the rather, ſith in this worke I have laboured onely to declare the ſecrets of every knowledge, and not to run into any large circumſtance of thoſe things which are moſt common and familiar to all men. And thus much of Fiſh and Fiſh-ponds, and their generall knowledge.

Now as touching the Angle and the ſecrets thereto belonging, you ſhall find it at large handled in the next Booke called,

Country Contentments.

FINIS.